HANDBOOK



PARTNER

PEUGEOT



Access to the Handbook

Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

From the appropriate Store, download the **Scan MyPeugeot APP** smartphone application.

Then select:
- the vehicle,
- the issue period corresponding to the date of 1st registration of your vehicle.

Download the content of the vehicle's **Handbook**.

The **Handbook** is available on the PEUGEOT website, in the 'MY PEUGEOT' section or at the following address: http://public.servicebox.peugeot.com/APddb/

Select:
- the language,
- the vehicle, its body style,
- the issue period of your handbook corresponding to the date of 1st registration of your vehicle.

Access to the **Handbook**.

This symbol indicates the latest information available.

Welcome

Thank you for choosing a Peugeot Partner.

This document presents the information and recommendations required for you to be able to explore your vehicle in complete safety.

Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given as indications only. Automobiles PEUGEOT reserves the right to modify the technical data, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the guide.

If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this **Complete Handbook** is passed on to the new owner.

In this document you will find all of the instructions and recommendations on use that will allow you to enjoy your vehicle to the fullest. It is strongly recommended that you familiarise yourself with it as well as the Warranty and Maintenance Record which will provide you with information about warranties, servicing and roadside assistance associated with your vehicle.

Key

Safety warning

Additional information

Contributes to the protection of the environment



Left-hand drive vehicle



Right-hand drive vehicle



Location of the equipment/button described with a black area

Key

This key will enable you to identify the special features of your vehicle:



Van



Crew cab

Overview

Labels 4

Eco-driving

Eco-driving 8
Eco-coaching 10

1 Instruments

Instrument Panel 11
Warning and indicator lamps 13
Indicators 28
Trip computer 33
Setting the time and date 35

2 Access

Key 37
Central locking/unlocking 48
Doors 50
General recommendations for the sliding side doors 50
Rear roof flap 52
Alarm 53
Electric windows 55

3 Ease of use and comfort

Tilting rear door windows 56
Steering wheel adjustment 57
Mirrors 57
General recommendations for the seats 58
Front seats 59
PEUGEOT i-Cockpit 59
2-seat front bench seat 61
Rear bench seat 63
Interior fittings 64
Multi-Flex bench seat 70
Crew cab 72
Heating 75
Manual air conditioning 75
Dual-zone automatic air conditioning 75
Recirculation of interior air 77
Front demist – defrost 78
Rear screen and/or door mirrors demisting – defrosting 79
Additional Heating/Ventilation 79

4 Lighting and visibility

Lighting control stalk 85
Direction indicators (flashers) 86
Automatic illumination of headlamps 86
Daytime running lamps/Sidelamps 87
Intelligent beam headlights 88
Manual headlamp beam height adjustment 91
Wiper control stalk 91
Changing a wiper blade 93
Automatic wiping 94

5 Safety

General safety recommendations 95
Emergency or assistance call 96
Hazard warning lamps 97
Horn 97
Electronic stability control (ESC) 97
Advanced Grip Control 101
Hill Assist Descent Control 102
Seat belts 103
Airbags 106
Child seats 109
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 110
Manual child lock 114
Electric child lock 114

6 Driving

Driving recommendations 115
Starting/switching off the engine 116
Anti-theft protection 120
Manual parking brake 121
Automatic electronic parking brake 121
Hill start assist 124
5-speed manual gearbox 125
6-speed manual gearbox 126
Automatic gearbox 126
Gear efficiency indicator 130
Stop & Start 130
Speed Limit recognition and recommendation 133
Speed limiter 137
Programmable cruise control 139
Dynamic cruise control 142
Memorising speeds 149
Active Safety Brake with Distance Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance 150
Active Lane Departure Warning System 153
Blind Spot Detection 157
Fatigue detection system 159
Parking sensors 160
Reversing camera 163
Surround Rear Vision 164
Under-inflation detection 167

7 Practical information

Compatibility of fuels 170
Fuel tank 171
Diesel misfuel prevention 172
Snow chains 173
Towing device 173
Overload indicator 175
Energy economy mode 176
Roof bars/Roof rack 177
Bonnet 177
Engines 178
Checking levels 179
Checks 181
AdBlue® (BlueHDi) 183
Advice on care 186

8 In the event of a breakdown

Running out of fuel (Diesel) 187
Tool kit 187
Temporary puncture repair kit 189
Spare wheel 191
Changing a bulb 195
Changing a fuse 201
12 V battery 203
Towing 206

9 Technical data

Dimensions 208
Engine technical data and towed loads 210
Identification markings 217

Audio equipment and telematics

Bluetooth audio system
PEUGEOT Connect Radio
PEUGEOT Connect Nav

Alphabetical index

Access to additional videos





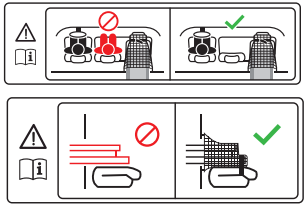


bit.ly/helpPSA

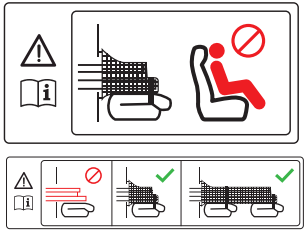
Labels



2-seat front bench seat section.



Multi-Flex bench seat section.



Crew cab section.



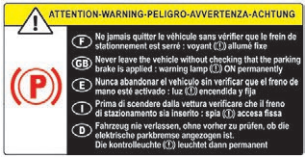
Additional heating/ventilation section.



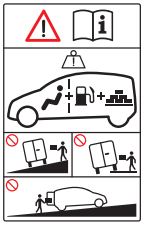
Deactivating the front passenger airbag section.



Manual child lock section.



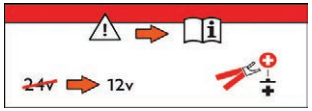
Automatic electronic parking brake section.



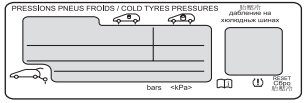
Overload indicator section.



Bonnet and **Changing a bulb** sections.

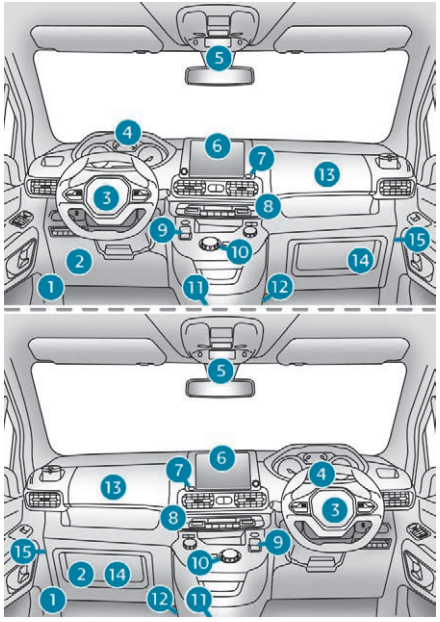


12 V battery section.



Temporary puncture repair kit and **Spare wheel** sections.

Instruments and controls



1
Bonnet release

2
Dashboard fuses

3
Horn

4
Instrument panel

5
Alarm Courtesy lamp Interior rear view mirror or screen for reproduction of the Surround Rear Vision Emergency and assistance call buttons

6
Monochrome screen with audio system Touch screen with PEUGEOT Connect Radio or PEUGEOT Connect Nav

7
USB port

8
Heating Manual air conditioning Dual-zone automatic air conditioning Front demisting – defrosting Rear screen demisting – defrosting

9
Automatic electronic parking brake "START/STOP" button

10
Gearbox

11
12 V socket

12
230 V accessory socket

13
Glove box USB port (inside the glove box)

14
Storage compartment

15
Deactivation of the front passenger airbag (on the side of the glove box, with the door opened)

Steering mounted controls



1
External lighting/direction indicators control stalk Button to change the Surround Rear Vision view/ voice recognition activation button

2
Wiper/screenwash/trip computer control stalk

3
Controls to select the multimedia source (**SRC**), to manage music (**LIST**) and to manage phone calls (**"telephone"** print)

4
Controls for speed limiter/ cruise control/Adaptive cruise control

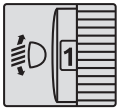
5
Instrument panel display mode selection wheel

6
Voice control Volume adjustment

7
Audio system setting controls

Side switch panel





Manual headlamp beam height adjustment



DSC/ASR systems



Stop & Start



Parking sensors



Additional heating/ventilation



Active Lane Departure Warning System



Tyre under-inflation detection



Electric child lock





Heated windscreen

Controls on the driver's door





Loading area



Electric child lock

Central switch panel





Hazard warning lamps



Locking/unlocking from the inside



Advanced Grip Control



Starting/switching off the engine



Hill Assist Descent



Eco mode



Automatic electronic parking brake

Eco-driving

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions.

Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. While accelerating, change up early.

With an automatic gearbox, give preference to automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear shift indicator invites you to engage the most suitable gear: as soon as the indication is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.
For vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions and also help reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 18 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.
Above 31 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.
Consider using equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof blind and window blinds...).

Unless it has automatic regulation, switch off the air conditioning as soon as the desired temperature has been reached.
Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if these are not automatically managed.
Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the ambient light level does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game etc.), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.
Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the bottom of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.
Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer...). Preferably, use a roof box.
Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.
Carry out this check in particular:
- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Do not forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, cabin filter...) and observe the schedule of operations in the manufacturer's service schedule.

With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty, your vehicle becomes polluting. Visit a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to bring your vehicle’s nitrogen oxides emissions back in line with the regulations.

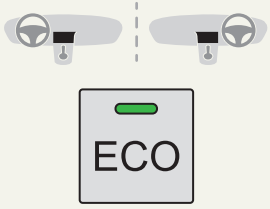
When filling the tank, do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the nozzle to avoid overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1,800 miles (3,000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

Eco mode

This mode allows you to optimise heating and air conditioning settings to reduce fuel consumption.

Activation/Deactivation



☞ To deactivate or activate this mode, press this button.

The indicator lamp is illuminated when the system is activated.

Eco-coaching

This function provides the driver with advice and information, in order to help adopt a more economical and environmentally friendly driving style.

It takes into account parameters such as optimisation of braking, acceleration management, gear changes, tyre inflation, use of the heating/air conditioning functions, etc.

Display in the instrument panel



By selecting the "**Eco-coaching**" tab of the central display in the matrix instrument panel, you can assess your driving in real time with the braking and acceleration indicator.

Display on the touch screen

The 4 "**Trip**", "**Air conditioning**", "**Maintenance**" and "**Driving**" tabs provide you with advice in order to optimise your driving style.

Information relating to the driving style can also appear in real time.

The "**Report**" tab assesses your driving style on a daily basis and gives an overall score over the entire week.

You have the option, at any time, to reset this report by pressing "**Reset**".

With PEUGEOT Connect Radio



☞ In the "**Applications**" menu, select "**Eco-coaching**".

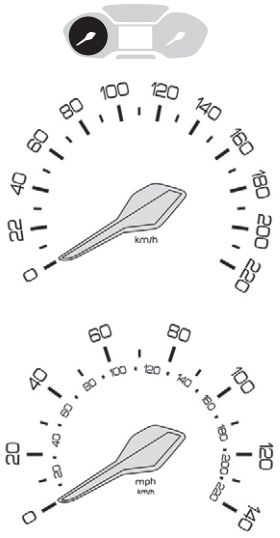
With PEUGEOT Connect Nav



☞ In the "**Applications**" menu, then the "**Vehicle Apps**" tab, select "**Eco-coaching**".

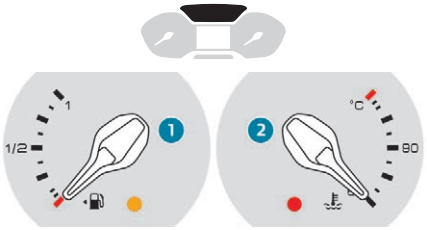
Instrument panel

Speed Indicator



Analogue speedometer (mph or km/h).

Indicators with LCD text or matrix instrument panel



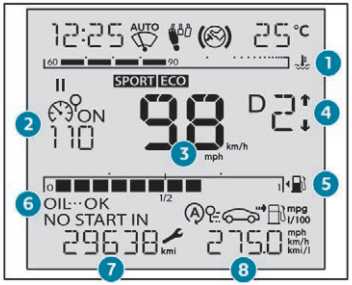
1. Fuel gauge.
2. Engine coolant fluid temperature gauge.

Display screen



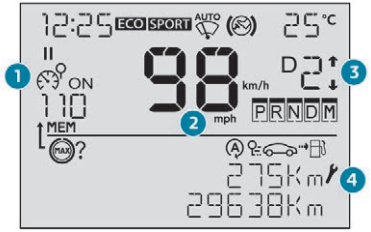
When travelling abroad, you may have to change the distance unit: the display of speed must be in the official units (miles or km) for the country. The change of units is done via the screen configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

With LCD symbols instrument panel



1. Engine coolant fluid temperature gauge.
2. Cruise control or speed limiter settings.
3. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
4. Gear efficiency indicator.
   Gear with an automatic gearbox.
5. Fuel gauge.
6. Engine oil level indicator.
7. Service indicator, then total distance recorder (miles or km).
   These functions are displayed successively on switching on the ignition.
8. Trip distance recorder (miles or km).

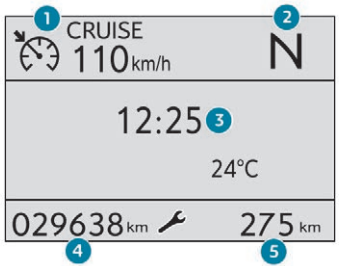
With LCD text instrument panel



1. Cruise control or speed limiter settings.
2. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
3. Gear efficiency indicator.
   Gear with an automatic gearbox.

4 Service indicator, then total distance recorder (miles or km), trip distance recorder (miles or km), message displays, etc.

With matrix instrument panel



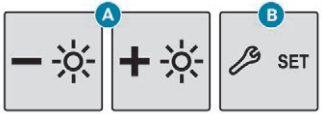
1. Cruise control or speed limiter settings.
2. Gear efficiency indicator.
   Gear with an automatic gearbox.
3. Display area: alert or function status message, trip computer, digital speedometer (mph or km/h), etc.

4 Service indicator, then total distance recorder (miles or km).
These functions are displayed successively on switching on the ignition.

5 Trip distance recorder (miles or km).

Control buttons

With LCD symbols instrument panel

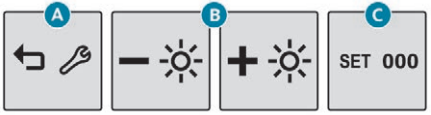


A. Lighting dimmer.
After a long press on **SET**: change the set time values and the units.

B. Reminder of servicing information or the remaining range with the SCR system and the AdBlue®.
Reset the function selected (service indicator or trip recorder).
After a long press: change the set time values and the units.

With LCD text instrument panel

With matrix instrument panel



A. Reminder of servicing information or the remaining range with the SCR system and the AdBlue®.
Depending on version: go back up a level, cancel the current operation.

B. Lighting dimmer.
Depending on version: movements in a menu, a list; changing a value.

C. Resetting the trip distance recorder (long press).
Resetting the service indicator.
Depending on version: enter the configuration menu and confirm a choice (short press).

Rev counter



Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm).

Warning and indicator lamps

Displayed as symbols, visual indicators which inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lamps) or of the operating status of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamps). Certain lamps light up in two ways (fixed or flashing) and/or in several colours.

Associated warnings

The illumination of a lamp can be accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message displayed in a screen.
Relating the type of alert to the operating status of the vehicle allows you to determine whether the situation is normal or a fault has occurred: refer to the description of each lamp for further information.

When the ignition is switched on

Certain red or orange warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. These warning lamps should go off as soon as the engine is started.

Persistent warning lamp

When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, the illumination of a red or orange warning lamp indicates a fault that needs further investigation, using any associated message and the description of the warning lamp in the documentation.

Where a warning lamp remains lit

The references **(1) (2)** and **(3)** in the warning and indicator lamp description indicate whether you should contact a qualified professional in addition to the immediate recommended actions.

(1): **You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so** and switch off the ignition.

(2): Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

List of warning and indicator lamps

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
Red warning/indicator lamps				
STOP	**STOP**	Fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.	Indicates a serious fault with the engine, braking system, power steering, automatic gearbox or a major electrical fault.	Carry out (1) and then (2).
	**Engine oil pressure**	Fixed.	There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.	Carry out (1) and then (2).
	**Brakes**	Fixed.	The brake fluid level has dropped significantly.	Carry out (1), then top up with brake fluid that complies with the manufacturer's recommendations. If the problem persists, carry out (2).
		Fixed.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system is faulty.	Carry out (1) and then (2).
	**Parking brake**	Fixed.	The parking brake is applied or not properly released.	

(1): **You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so** and switch off the ignition.

(2): Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	**Maximum coolant temperature**	Fixed (warning lamp or LED), and needle in the red zone (depending on version).	The temperature of the cooling system is too high.	Carry out (1), then wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up the coolant, if necessary. If the problem persists, carry out (2).
	**Battery charge**	Fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, etc.).	Clean and retighten the terminals. If the warning lamp does not go off when the engine is started, carry out (2).
	**Power steering**	Fixed.	The power steering has a fault.	Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).
	**Seat belt not fastened/ unfastened**	Fixed or flashing accompanied by an audible signal.	A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened (depending on version).	
	**Door open**	Fixed, associated with a message identifying the access. An audible signal supplements the alert if the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h).	A door, the boot, the tailgate or the tailgate screen is still open (depending on version).	Close the access. If your vehicle is equipped with a right-hand hinged door, its opening will **not** be indicated by this warning lamp.
	**Automatic electronic parking brake**	Fixed.	The electric parking brake is applied.	

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
Orange warning/indicator lamps				
	**Automatic functions (with automatic electronic parking brake)**	Fixed.	The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" functions are deactivated.	Activate the functions again.
	**Automatic application (with automatic electronic parking brake)**	Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	The automatic application is not available, the parking brake can only be used manually.	Use the automatic electronic parking brake control lever. If automatic release is also not available, use manual release.
	**Malfunction (with automatic electronic parking brake)**	Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	The parking brake is not operating at maximum efficiency and cannot ensure parking the vehicle in complete safety in all situations.	Make your vehicle safe: ☞ Park on a level surface. ☞ With a manual gearbox, engage a gear. ☞ With an automatic gearbox, with **P** selected, place the supplied chocks against one of the wheels. Then carry out (2).
	**Malfunction (with automatic electronic parking brake)**	Flashing, when the vehicle is started.	The parking brake has not been properly released.	Carry out (1) and try to completely release the parking brake using the control lever, with your foot on the brake pedal. If the problem persists, carry out (2).

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	**Low fuel level**	Fixed (warning lamp or LED) and needle in the red zone (depending on version), accompanied by an audible signal and a message. The audible signal and the message are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards zero.	When it first comes on there remains **less than 6 litres** of fuel in the tank.	Refuel without delay to avoid running out of fuel. **Never drive until completely empty**, this could damage the emission control and injection systems.
	**Presence of water in diesel filter**	Fixed (with LCD symbols instrument panel).	The diesel filter contains water.	Risk of damage to the injection system : carry out (2) without delay.
	**Engine self-diagnosis system**	Flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed. Carry out (2) **without fail**.
		Fixed.	The emission control system has a fault.	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. Carry out (3) quickly.
		Fixed.	A minor failure in the engine has been detected.	Carry out (3).
		Fixed.	A major engine fault has been detected.	Carry out (1) and then (2).

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	**Diesel engine pre-heating**	Fixed. The period of illumination depends on the climatic conditions.	The ignition is on.	Wait until the warning lamp goes off before starting. If the engine does not start, switch the ignition off and then on, wait until the indicator lamp goes off again, then start the engine.
	**Under-inflation**	Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	The pressure in one or more wheels is too low.	Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. Reinitialise the detection system after adjusting the pressure.
		Under-inflation warning lamp flashing then fixed and Service warning lamp fixed.	The system is faulty: tyre pressures are no longer monitored.	As soon as possible, check the pressure of the tyres and carry out (3).
	**Anti-lock braking system (ABS)**	Fixed.	The anti-lock braking system has a fault.	The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).
	**Distance Alert/ Active Safety Brake**	Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	The system has been deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.	
		Flashing.	The system is operating.	The vehicle brakes briefly so as to reduce the speed of collision with the vehicle ahead.
		Fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.	The system has a fault.	Carry out (3).

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	**Distance Alert/ Active Safety Brake**	Fixed.	The system has a fault.	If these warning lamps come on after the engine is switched off and restarted, carry out (3).
	**Particle filter (Diesel)**	Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message about the risk of particle filter blockage.	The particle filter is beginning to saturate.	As soon as traffic conditions allow, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.
		Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message signalling that the additive level in the particle filter is too low.	The minimum level of the additive reservoir has been reached.	Top up as soon as possible: carry out (3).
	**Airbags**	Fixed.	One of the airbags or seat belt pretensioners is faulty.	Carry out (3).
	**Front passenger airbag (ON)**	Fixed.	The front passenger airbag is activated. The control is in the "**ON**" position.	**In this case, do NOT install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat – Risk of serious injury!**
	**Front passenger airbag (OFF)**	Fixed.	The front passenger airbag is deactivated. The control is in the "**OFF**" position.	You can install a "rearward facing" child seat, unless there is a fault with the airbags (airbag warning lamp on).
	**Dynamic stability control (DSC) and anti-slip regulation (ASR)**	Fixed.	The system is deactivated.	Press the button to reactivate it. The DSC/ASR system is activated automatically when the vehicle is started, and from around 30 mph (50 km/h).

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	**Dynamic stability control (DSC) and anti-slip regulation (ASR)**	Flashing.	The DSC/ASR adjustment is activated if there is a loss of grip or trajectory.	
		Fixed.	The DSC/ASR system has a fault.	Carry out (3).
	**Hill start assist**	Fixed.	The system has a fault.	Carry out (3).
	**Emergency brake anomaly (with automatic electronic parking brake)**	Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	Emergency braking does not have full power.	If automatic release is not available, use manual release.
	**Active Lane Departure Warning System**	Fixed.	The system has been automatically deactivated or placed on standby.	
		Flashing	You are about to cross a broken lane marking without operating the direction indicators.	The system is activated, then corrects the trajectory on the side of the lane marking detected.
		Fixed.	The system has a fault.	Carry out (3).

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	**Overload indicator**	Fixed.	The weight of the vehicle load exceeds the maximum authorised weight.	The weight of the vehicle load must be reduced.
		Fixed, accompanied by a message.	The overload indicator system has a fault.	Carry out (2).
	**AdBlue® (with 1.6 BlueHDi Euro 6.1)**	Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 375 miles (600 km) and 1,500 miles (2,400 km).	Top up the AdBlue® as soon as possible, or carry out (3).
		AdBlue® warning lamp flashing and Service warning lamp fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is less than 375 miles (600 km).	You **must** top up the AdBlue® to **avoid a breakdown**, or carry out (3).
		AdBlue® warning lamp flashing and Service warning lamp fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting prevention system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue® or carry out (2). It is **essential** to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

(1): **You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so** and switch off the ignition.

(2): Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
AdBlue	**AdBlue® (with 1.5 BlueHDi Euro 6.2)**	On for around 30 seconds every time the vehicle is started, accompanied by a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km).	Top up the AdBlue®.
		Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 60 miles (100 km) and 500 miles (800 km).	Top up the AdBlue® **as soon as possible**, or carry out (3).
		Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is less than 60 miles (100 km).	You **must** top up the AdBlue® to **avoid a breakdown**, or carry out (3).
		Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting prevention system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue®, or carry out (2). It is **essential** to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
AdBlue +  + 	**SCR emissions control system**	Fixed when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	A fault with the SCR emissions control system has been detected.	This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.
		AdBlue® warning lamp flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the fixed Service and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	Depending on the message displayed, you can continue driving for up to 650 miles (1,100 km) before the engine starting prevention system is triggered.	Carry out (3) as soon as possible to **avoid running out of fuel**.
		AdBlue® warning lamp flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the fixed Service and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	A starting prevention system prevents the engine from restarting (over the authorised driving limit after confirmation of a fault with the emissions control system).	To start the engine, carry out (2).

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	**Service**	Temporarily on, accompanied by the display of a message.	One or more minor faults A starting prevention system for which there is no specific warning lamp have been detected.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel. You can deal with certain anomalies yourself, for example an open door or the start of saturation of the particle filter. For any other problems, such as a fault with the tyre under-inflation detection system, carry out (3).
		Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	One or more major faults for which there is no specific warning lamp have been detected.	Identify the cause of the anomaly using the message displayed in the instrument panel, then carry out (3).
		Fixed, accompanied by the message ‘Parking brake fault’.	Automatic release of the automatic electronic parking brake is unavailable.	Carry out (2).
		Service warning lamp fixed and service spanner flashing then fixed.	Service is overdue.	Only with BlueHDi Diesel versions. Your vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.
	**Malfunction (with automatic electronic parking brake)**	Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	You can no longer immobilise the vehicle with the engine running.	If manual application and release are not working, the automatic electronic parking brake control lever is faulty. The automatic functions must be used at all times and are automatically reactivated in the event of failure of the control lever. Carry out (2).

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	**Malfunction (with automatic electronic parking brake)**	Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	The parking brake is faulty: manual and automatic functions may not be working.	When stationary, to immobilise your vehicle: ☞ Pull and hold the control lever for approximately 7 to 15 seconds, until the warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel. If this procedure does not work, make your vehicle safe: ☞ Park on a level surface. ☞ With a manual gearbox, engage a gear. ☞ With an automatic gearbox, select **P**, then put the supplied chocks against one of the wheels. Then carry out (2).
	**Malfunction of the braking systems (with Post Collision Safety Brake (APCB))**	Fixed.		Carry out (3) quickly.
	**Fault concerning the airbags or pyrotechnic pretensioning systems (with Post Collision Safety Brake (APCB))**	Fixed.		Carry out (3) quickly.
	**Rear foglamp**	Fixed.	The lamp is on.	

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
Green warning/indicator lamps				
	**Stop & Start**	Fixed.	When the vehicle stops the Stop & Start puts the engine into STOP mode.	
		Flashing temporarily.	STOP mode is momentarily unavailable or START mode is automatically triggered.	
	**Hill Assist Descent Control**	Fixed.	The system has been activated, but the conditions for regulation are not met (gradient, speed too high, gear engaged).	
		Flashing	The function is starting regulation.	The vehicle is being braked; the brake lamps come on during the descent.
	**Eco mode**	Fixed.	ECO mode is active.	Certain parameters are adjusted with a view to reducing fuel consumption.
	**Automatic wiping**	Fixed.	Automatic windscreen wiping is activated.	
	**Front foglamps**	Fixed.	The front foglamps are on.	
	**Sidelamps**	Fixed.	The lamps are on.	
	**Direction indicators**	Direction indicators with audible signal.	The direction indicators are on.	

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	**Dipped beam headlamps**	Fixed.	The lamps are on.	
	**Intelligent beam headlights**	Fixed.	The function has been activated via the touch screen (menu Vehicle/Driving). The lighting control stalk is in the "AUTO" position.	
Blue warning/indicator lamps				
	**Main beam headlamps**	Fixed.	The lamps are on.	
Black/white warning lamps				
	**Foot on brake**	Fixed.	Omission or insufficient pressure on the brake pedal.	With an automatic gearbox, with the engine running, before releasing the parking brake, to move out of position **P**.
	**Foot on the clutch**	Fixed.	Stop & Start: the change to START mode is rejected because the clutch pedal is not fully depressed.	Fully depress the clutch pedal.
	**Automatic wiping**	Fixed.	Automatic front wiping is activated.	

(1): **You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so** and switch off the ignition.

(2): Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Indicators

Service indicator

The service indicator is displayed on the instrument panel. Depending on the vehicle version:

- the distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due, or the distance travelled since it was due preceded by the sign “-”.
- an alert message indicates the distance remaining, as well as the period before the next service is due or how long it is overdue.

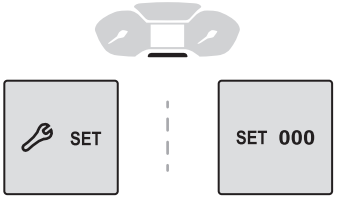
The distance indicated (in miles or kilometres) is calculated according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service.
The alert may be triggered close to a due date.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/ Observations
	**Service spanner**	Lights up temporarily when the ignition is switched on.	Between 1,800 miles (3,000 km) and 600 miles (1,000 km) remain before the next service is due.	
		Fixed, when the ignition is switched on.	The service is due in less than 600 miles (1,000 km).	Have your vehicle serviced very soon.
	**Service spanner flashing**	Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on. (For BlueHDi Diesel versions, associated with the service warning lamp).	The servicing interval has been exceeded.	Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

Resetting the service indicator

The service indicator must be reset after each service.

☞ Switch off the ignition.



☞ Press and hold this button.
☞ Switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
☞ Release the button when **=0** is displayed; the spanner disappears.

If you have to disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least five minutes for the reset to be registered.

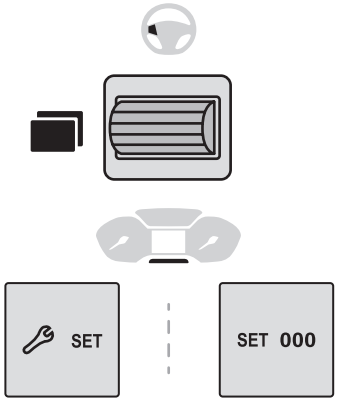
Retrieving the service information

You can access the service information at any time.

☞ Press this button.

The service information is displayed for a few seconds, then disappears.

Instrument panel display screen



When stationary, use the left-hand dial on the steering wheel or the "**SET**" button in the instrument panel to navigate through the menus to configure certain vehicle settings.

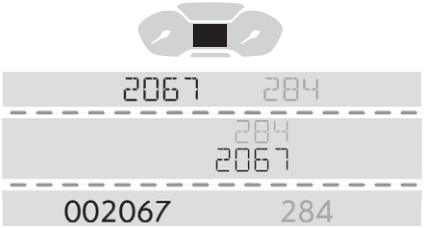
Operation of the dial:

- Press: go to the **Main menu**, confirm the selection.
- Rotate (other than in a menu): scroll through the list of active functions available.
- Rotate (in a menu): move up or down in the menu.

Distance recorders

The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

Total distance recorder

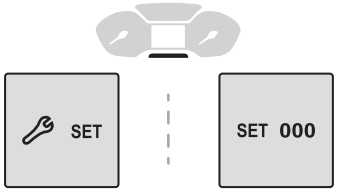


It measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.

Trip distance recorder

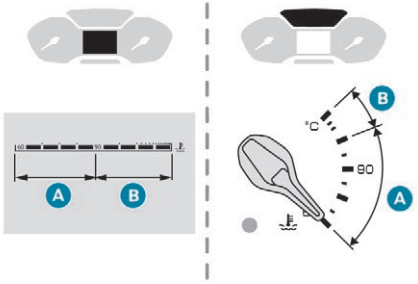
It measures the distance travelled since it was reset by the driver.

Resetting the trip recorder



☞ With the ignition on, press the button until zeros appear.

Engine coolant temperature



With the engine running, when the needle or bar graph (depending on version) is:

- in zone **A**, the temperature of the engine coolant is correct,
- in zone **B**, the temperature of the engine coolant is too high; the maximum temperature and central **STOP** warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a warning message.

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Checking

After driving for a few minutes, the temperature and pressure in the cooling system increase.
To top up the level:

- wait at least one hour for the engine to cool,
- unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop,
- when the pressure has dropped, remove the cap,
- top up the level to the "MAX" mark.

For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Be aware of the risk of scalding when topping up the coolant. Do not fill above the maximum level (indicated on the reservoir).

Engine oil level indicator

On versions fitted with an electric oil level indicator, the state of the engine oil level is displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, at the same time as the servicing information.

i The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been stopped for more than 30 minutes.

Oil level correct



This is indicated by a message in the instrument panel.

Oil level incorrect



This is indicated by a message in the instrument panel.

If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.

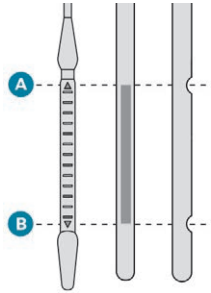
Oil level indicator fault



This is indicated by a message on the instrument panel. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Dipstick

i To locate the dipstick and the oil filler cap for the **Diesel engine**, refer to the corresponding section.



A = maximum; never exceed this level.
B = minimum; top up the level via the oil filler hole, with the oil type that is suitable for your engine.

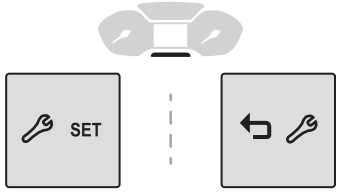
AdBlue® range indicators

These range indicators are present only on BlueHDi Diesel versions.
Once the AdBlue® tank is on reserve or after detection of a fault with the SCR emissions control system, when the ignition is switched on, an indicator displays an estimate of the distance that can be covered, the range, before engine starting is prevented.

In the event of the risk of non-starting related to a lack of AdBlue®

! The engine starting prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty.

Range greater than 1,500 miles (2,400 km)
When the ignition is switched on, no information on range is displayed automatically.



Pressing this button temporarily displays the driving range.

With 1.6 BlueHDi (Euro 6.1) engine

Remaining range between 1,500 miles and 500 (2,400 and 800 km)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.
When driving, this message is displayed every 185 miles (300 km) until the fluid level has been topped up.
The reserve level has been reached; it is recommended that you top up as soon as possible.

Remaining range less than 375 miles (600 km)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, accompanied by the permanent lighting of the Service warning lamp, an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.
When driving, this message is displayed every 30 seconds until the AdBlue level has been topped up.

It is essential to top up as soon as possible and before the tank is completely empty; otherwise it will not be possible to restart the engine after the next stop.

Breakdown due to a lack of AdBlue®



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, along with the Service warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible".

The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting prevention system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.

! To be able to restart the engine, it is essential to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

i For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)**, and, in particular, on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

With 1.5 BlueHDi (Euro 6.2) engine

Range between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km)



Each time the vehicle is started, this warning lamp comes on for about 30 seconds, accompanied by the display of a message ("Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles (km)") indicating the remaining range in miles or kilometres.
The reserve level has been reached; it is recommended that you top up as soon as possible.
These messages are accompanied by the recommendation not to top up with more than 10 litres of AdBlue.

Range between 500 and 60 miles (800 and 100 km)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal (1 beep) and the display of a message ("Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles (km)") indicating the remaining range in miles or kilometres.
When driving, the audible signal and the message display are triggered every 60 miles (100 km) until the level is topped up.
It is essential to top up as soon as possible and before the tank is completely empty, otherwise it will not be possible to restart the engine.

Remaining range less than 60 miles (100 km)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal (1 beep) and the display of a message (e.g. "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.
When driving, the audible signal and the message display are triggered every 6 miles (10 km) until the AdBlue tank is topped up.
It is essential to top up as soon as possible and before the tank is completely empty; otherwise it will not be possible to restart the engine after the next stop.

Breakdown due to a lack of AdBlue®



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible".
The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting prevention system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.

! To be able to restart the engine, it is essential to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

i For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)**, and, in particular, on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

In the event of a fault with the SCR emissions control system

! An engine starting prevention system is activated automatically after you have driven a further 650 miles (1,100 km) following confirmation of a fault with the SCR emissions control system. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

In the event of the detection of a fault



These warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the "Emissions fault" message.

The alert is triggered while driving as soon as the fault is detected for the first time, then when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the fault persists.

If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnostic checks of the SCR emissions control system.

During the permitted driving phase (between 650 and 0 miles (1,100 km and 0 km))



If a fault with the SCR system is confirmed (after 30 miles (50 km) covered with the permanent display of the message signalling a fault), these warning lamps come on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, associated with an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g.: "Emissions fault: Starting prevented in 300 km") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds while the fault with the SCR emission control system persists.
The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.
You should go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
Otherwise you will not be able to restart the vehicle.

Starting prevented



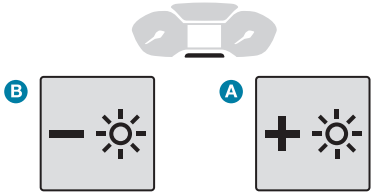
Each time the ignition is switched on, these warning lamps come on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault: Starting prevented".

You have exceeded the authorised driving limit: the starting prevention system does not allow the engine to be started.

To be able to restart the engine, you must call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Lighting dimmer

Permits manual adjustment of the brightness of the instrument panel to suit the exterior light level.



With the lamps on (not in the AUTO position), press button **A** to increase the brightness of the lighting or button **B** to reduce it.
Release the button when the desired level is reached.

Touch screen lighting dimmer



- In the **Settings** menu, select "**Brightness**". Or select "**OPTIONS**", "**Screen configuration**" then "**Brightness**".
- Adjust the brightness by pressing the arrows or moving the slider.

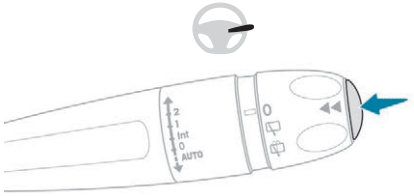
The brightness can be adjusted differently for day mode and night mode.

Trip computer

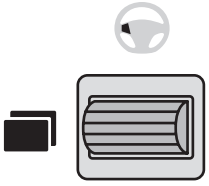
Information displayed about the current journey (range, fuel consumption, average speed, etc.).

Display of information

It is displayed successively.
- Trip mileage.
- Range.
- Current fuel consumption.
- Average speed.
- Stop & Start time counter.
- Information from the speed limit recognition system.



☞ Press this button, located on the end of the **wiper control stalk**.



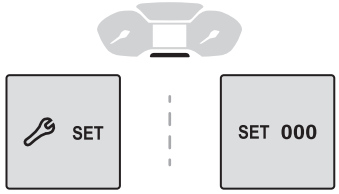
☞ Or press the dial on the steering wheel.

Reset trip

The reset is performed when the trip is displayed.

☞ Press this button, located on the end of the **wiper control stalk**, for more than two seconds.

☞ Press the dial on the steering wheel for more than two seconds.



☞ Press this button for more than two seconds.

A few definitions…

Range

(miles or km)

The distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (depending on the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

ⓘ This value may vary following a change in the style of driving or the terrain, resulting in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 19 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed.

After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 62 miles (100 km).

⚠ If dashes instead of figures continue to be displayed when driving, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Current fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

Calculated during the last few seconds.

ⓘ This function is only displayed from 19 mph (30 km/h).

Average fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

Calculated since the last **trip computer** reset.

Average speed

(mph or km/h)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Distance travelled

(miles or km)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

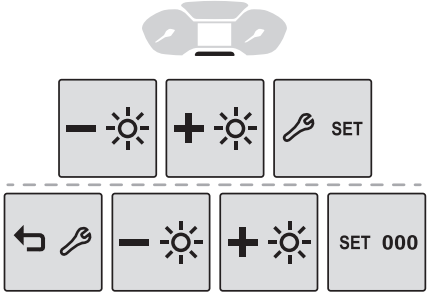
Stop & Start time counter

(minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)

If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.
It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Setting the time and date

Without audio system



You can adjust the date and time in the instrument panel display.

SET 000 / SET

☞ Hold this button down.

☞ Press one of these buttons to select the setting to be changed.

SET 000 / SET

☞ Press this button briefly to confirm.

☞ Press one of these buttons to change the setting and confirm again to register the change.

With audio system

☞ Press the **MENU** button for access to the main menu.
☞ Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" button to select the "Personalisation-configuration" menu, then press **OK**.
☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the "Display configuration" menu, then press **OK**.
☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the "Date and time adjustment" button, then press **OK**.
☞ Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" button to select the setting to modify. Confirm by pressing the **OK** button.
☞ Adjust the settings one by one, confirming with the **OK** button.
☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button, then the **OK** button to select the **OK** box and confirm or the **Back** button to cancel.

With PEUGEOT Connect Radio

☞ Select the **Settings** menu in the upper banner of the touch screen.

☞ Select "**System configuration**".

☞ Select "**Date and time**".

☞ Select "**Date**" or "**Time**".
☞ Choose the display formats.
☞ Change the date and/or time using the numeric keypad.
☞ Confirm with "**OK**".

With PEUGEOT Connect Nav

Setting of the time and date is only available if synchronisation with the GPS is deactivated.

☞ Select the **Settings** menu in the upper or side banner of the touch screen.

☞ Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



☞ Select "**Setting the time-date**".

☞ Select the "**Date**" or "**Time**" tab.
☞ Set the date and/or time using the numeric keypad.
☞ Confirm with "**OK**".

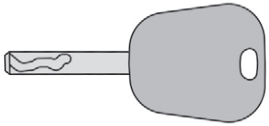
Additional settings

You can choose:
- To change the time zone.
- To change the display format of the date and time (12h/24h).
- To activate or deactivate the summer time management function (+1 hour).
- To activate or deactivate the synchronisation with the GPS (UTC).

The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Key

Conventional key



The key allows the central locking or unlocking of the vehicle using the door lock.

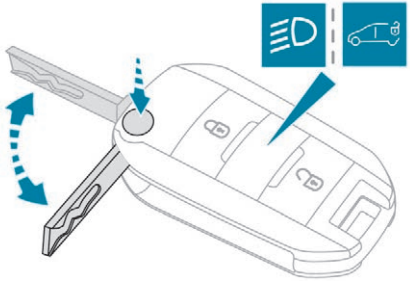
It also allows the fuel filler cap to be removed and refitted and the engine to be started or switched off.

Remote control key

It allows the central locking or unlocking of the vehicle using the door lock or from a distance. It also allows the vehicle to be located, the fuel filler cap to be removed and refitted and the engine to be started or switched off, as well as providing protection against theft.

i The remote control buttons are not active when the ignition is switched on.

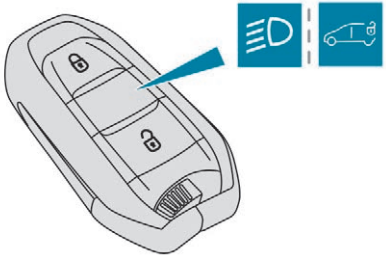
Unfolding/folding the key



☞ Press this button to unfold or fold the key.

! If you do not press the button, you risk damaging the remote control.

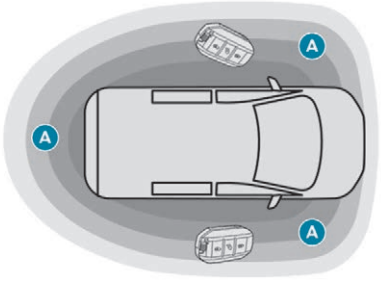
Keyless Entry and Starting



This allows the central locking or unlocking of the vehicle from a distance.

It is also used to locate and start the vehicle, as well as providing protection against theft.

"Keyless Entry and Starting" on your person



This allows the unlocking, locking and starting of the vehicle while keeping the remote control on your person.

i In the ignition on (accessories) position, with the "START/STOP" button, the hands-free function is deactivated and it is impossible to open the doors.
For more information on **Starting/ switching off the engine** and in particular the "ignition on" position, refer to the corresponding section.

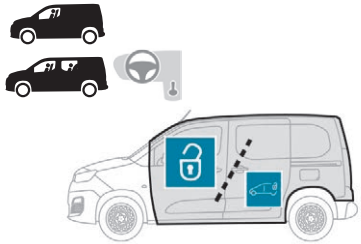
The central unlocking, locking or deadlocking does not take place:
- if the ignition is on,
- if one of the doors or the boot is still open,
- if the key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system has been left inside the vehicle.

When the vehicle is locked (with the remote control or Keyless Entry and Starting), if it is unlocked inadvertently, it will lock itself again automatically after about thirty seconds unless a door has been opened.
And if your vehicle has an alarm, this will be reactivated (with volumetric monitoring, even if this had been deactivated).

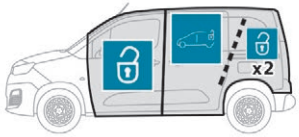
The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors by the remote control can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

As a safety measure (children on board), never leave the vehicle without taking your Keyless Entry and Starting remote control with you, even for a short period.
Be aware of the risk of theft when the Keyless Entry and Starting remote control is in the recognition zone with the vehicle unlocked.
In order to preserve the charge of the battery in the remote control, the "hands-free" functions go into extended stand-by after 21 days without use.
To restore these functions, press one of the remote control buttons or start the engine with the remote control at the reader.

Total or selective unlocking



Total unlocking unlocks **all** the vehicle's doors (front, side and rear).

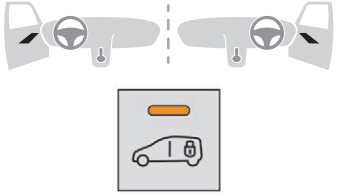


Selective unlocking unlocks either the **cabin** doors, or the doors of the **loading area** (side and rear).

The separated unlocking system between **cabin** and **loading area** is a security measure.
It is used to close access to the part of the vehicle in which you are not present.

Programming

Without audio system

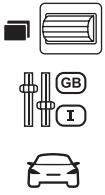




☞ To **activate** this selectivity between **cab** and **loading area** or to **deactivate** this selectivity and return to **total** unlocking, switch the ignition on and press this button for more than two seconds.

An audible signal and, depending on equipment, a display message, confirm that the request has been acknowledged.

With audio system or touch screen



Activation or deactivation of the selectivity between the **driver's door and the other doors** and the **boot** is done via the vehicle configuration menu.

Complete unlocking

With the key

☞ To **completely** unlock the vehicle, insert the key in the lock then turn it towards the front of the vehicle.

☞ Then pull the handle to open the door.

If fitted to your vehicle, the alarm is not deactivated. Opening a door will trigger the alarm, which can be stopped by switching the ignition on.

Using the remote control



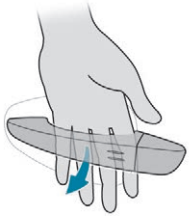
☞ Press one of these buttons to unlock the vehicle.

i 

If your vehicle is so equipped, pressing and holding this button allows the windows to be opened. The window stops when you release the control.

i Unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for around 2 seconds.
At the same time, depending on your version, the door mirrors unfold.

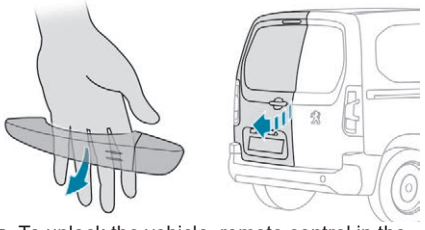
With the Keyless Entry and Starting on your person



☞ To unlock the vehicle, remote control on your person and in recognition zone **A**, pass your hand behind one of the door handles (front doors, manual sliding side doors or side-hinged doors).

☞ Pull the handle to open the corresponding door.

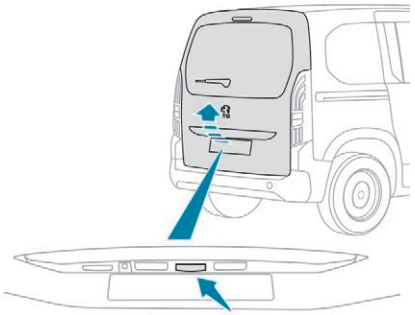
With side-hinged doors



☞ To unlock the vehicle, remote control in the recognition zone **A**, run a hand behind the handle of the side-hinged door.

☞ Then pull the handle to open it.

With tailgate



☞ To unlock the vehicle, with the remote control in recognition zone **A**, press the tailgate release control.
☞ Raise the tailgate.

Selective unlocking

Using the remote control



☞ To unlock just the **cab** doors, press this button once.
☞ To unlock the doors of the **loading area** (side and rear), press this button a second time.

or



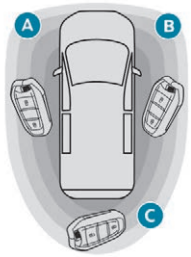
☞ Press this button on the remote control to unlock only the **loading area**.



If your vehicle is so equipped, pressing and holding this button allows the windows to be opened. The window stops when you release the control.

Unlocking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for around 2 seconds.
At the same time, depending on your version, the door mirrors unfold.

With Keyless Entry and Starting on your person





☞ To unlock the **cab** alone, while having the remote control on your person in the recognition zone **A**, pass your hand behind the handle of the driver's door.



☞ To unlock the **cab** alone, while having the remote control on your person in the recognition zone **B**, pass your hand behind the handle of the driver's door.

☞ Pull the handle to open the cab.

The door locking state of the **loading area** remains unchanged.

☞ To unlock the **loading area** alone, with the remote control on your person in the recognition zone **A**, **B** or **C**, pass your hand behind one of the handles of the left-hand side door, right-hand side door or the rear door (the left-hand hinged door or the tailgate).
☞ Pull the handle to open the loading area.

Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold only when the cab is unlocked, and the alarm is deactivated.

Unlocking



Unlocking is signalled by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds. Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold and the alarm is deactivated.

With the key

☞ To **completely** unlock the vehicle, insert the key in the lock then turn it towards the front of the vehicle.
☞ Then pull the handle to open the door.

If fitted to your vehicle, the alarm is not deactivated. Opening a door will trigger the alarm, which can be stopped by switching the ignition on.

Using the remote control



☞ Press this button to unlock the vehicle.



If fitted to your vehicle, pressing and holding this button opens the windows. The window stops when you release the control.

With the Keyless Entry and Starting on your person



☞ To unlock the vehicle, remote control on your person and in recognition zone **A**, pass your hand behind one of the door handles (front doors, manual sliding side doors or side-hinged doors).
☞ Pull the handle to open the corresponding door.

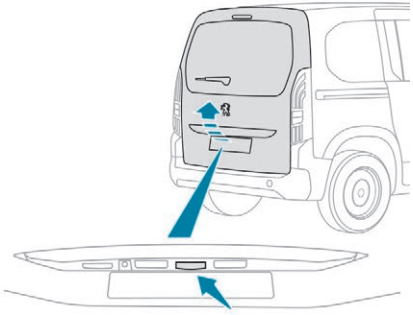
With side-hinged doors





☞ To unlock the vehicle, remote control in the recognition zone **A**, run a hand behind the handle of the side-hinged door.
☞ Then pull the handle to open it.

With tailgate



☞ To unlock the vehicle, with the remote control in recognition zone **A**, press the tailgate release control.
☞ Raise the tailgate.

Locking

! Ensure that no person or object prevents the correct closing of the windows.
Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.

i If your vehicle is not fitted with an alarm, the locking/deadlocking is signalled by the fixed illumination of the direction indicators for about two seconds.
Depending on your version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

With the key

☞ To lock the vehicle, insert the key in the lock then turn it towards the rear of the vehicle.

Using the remote control



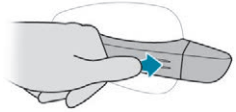
☞ To lock the vehicle, press this button.

i 

If fitted to your vehicle, pressing and holding this button closes the windows. The window stops when you release the control.

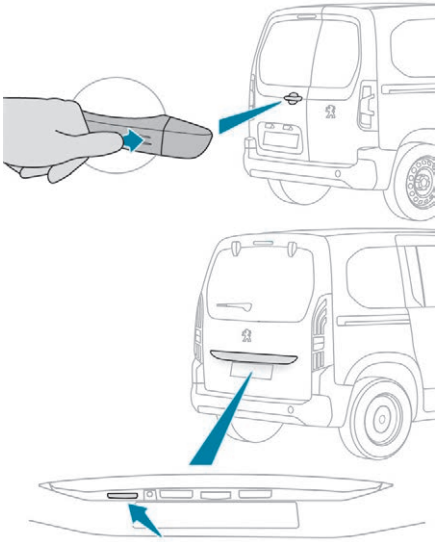
! Ensure that no person or object prevents the correct closing of the windows.
Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.

With the Keyless Entry and Starting "on your person"



☞ To lock the vehicle, with the remote control in the recognition zone **A**, press with a finger or thumb on the markings of one of the front or rear door handles.

With side-hinged doors/tailgate



☞ To lock the vehicle, with the remote control in the recognition zone **A**, press the left-hand door/tailgate locking control.

i 

If your vehicle is so equipped, pressing and holding the locking controls allows the windows to be closed. If you release the control, the window stops.

Driving with the doors locked could make it more difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency.
As a safety measure (with children on board), never leave the vehicle without taking your remote control with you, even for a short period.

If a door is not properly closed (except the right-hand door with side-hinged rear doors):

- vehicle stationary and engine running, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message for a few seconds,
- vehicle moving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and an alert message for a few seconds.

Deadlocking

Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative.
It also deactivates the manual central control button.
Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

With the key

- To deadlock the vehicle, insert the key in the lock then turn it towards the rear.
- Then **within five seconds**, turn the key towards the rear again.

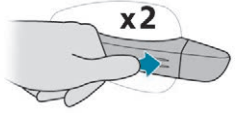
With the remote control

- To deadlock the vehicle, press this button.
- Then **within five seconds after locking**, press this button again.

Depending on the version you have, the electric door mirrors fold at the same time.

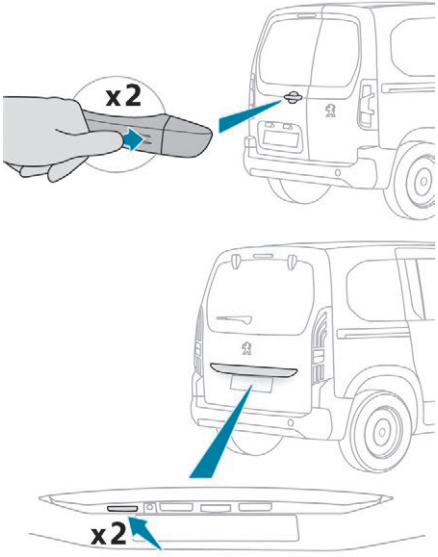
If your vehicle is so equipped, pressing and holding the locking controls allows the windows to be closed. If you release the button, the window stops.

With the Keyless Entry and Starting "on your person"



- To lock the vehicle, with the remote control in the recognition zone **A**, press with a finger or thumb on the markings of one of the front or rear door handles.
- To deadlock the vehicle, press the marking again **within five seconds.**

With side-hinged doors/tailgate



- To lock the vehicle, with the remote control in recognition zone **A**, press the left-hand door/tailgate locking control.

☞ To deadlock the vehicle, press the control again **within five seconds**.

Locating your vehicle

This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, particularly in poor light. Your vehicle must have been locked for more than five seconds.



☞ Press this button.

This will switch on the courtesy lamps and the direction indicators will flash for around ten seconds.

Remote operation of lighting



A short press of the button allows you to switch on the lighting from a distance (lighting the sidelamps, the dipped beam headlamps and number plate lamps).
A second press on this button before the end of the timed period cancels the remote lighting.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic immobiliser

The remote control contains an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

A few seconds after switching off the ignition, this system locks the engine control system, therefore preventing the engine from being started in the event of a break-in.



In the event of a fault, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the screen.

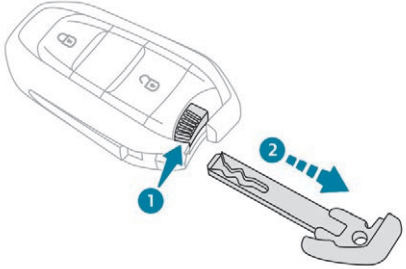
The vehicle will not start; contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

Back-up control(s)

If the battery is flat, attempt to lock/unlock the vehicle as usual. If this does not work, use the mechanical systems described below.
Also use these systems to mechanically lock/unlock the doors in the event of:

- central locking system failure,
- remote control battery discharged,
- remote control fault,
- vehicle in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.

Where is the integral key of the Keyless Entry and Starting?



☞ Pull and hold button **1**, to extract the integral key **2**.

Locking of the vehicle

☞ Insert the integral key in the driver's door lock, then turn it to the rear.

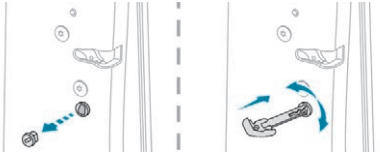
Unlocking of the vehicle

☞ Insert the integral key in the driver's door lock, then turn it to the front.

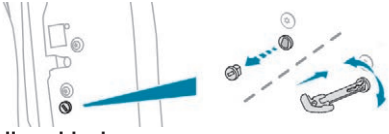
If your vehicle has an alarm, it will not be deactivated/activated on unlocking/locking the vehicle.
Opening a door will trigger the alarm, which can be stopped by switching the ignition on.
To deadlock the vehicle, turn the key again within five seconds of locking.

Locking of one part of the vehicle (front passenger door/sliding side door/side-hinged doors)

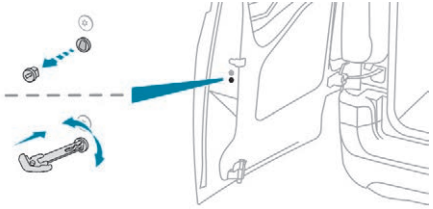
- With a **sliding side door** or **side-hinged doors**, if fitted to your vehicle, check that the electric child lock is not activated.
- Open the door.



Front passenger door



Sliding side door



Side-hinged doors

- Remove the cap located on the edge of the door.
- Insert the integral key into the latch (without forcing) and then **turn** the assembly.
- Remove the key and refit the cap.
- Close the door(s) and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked correctly.

Unlocking of one part of the vehicle (front passenger door/ sliding side door/side-hinged doors)

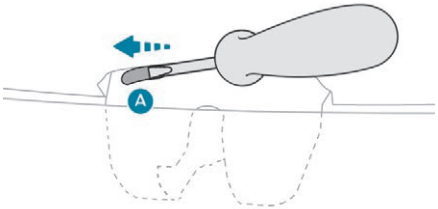
- Use the interior opening handle.

or

- With **side-hinged doors**, insert the integral key in the (left-hand) door lock, then turn it.

For more information on the **Child lock** on a **sliding side door** or **side-hinged doors**, refer to the corresponding section.

Unlocking the tailgate



- From inside the vehicle, insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the tailgate.
- Move the latch to the left.

If the battery is flat and your vehicle is equipped with a tailgate and a Multi-Flex bench seat, you cannot access the inside of the loading area.
You have to replace the battery in order to be able to access it again.
For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

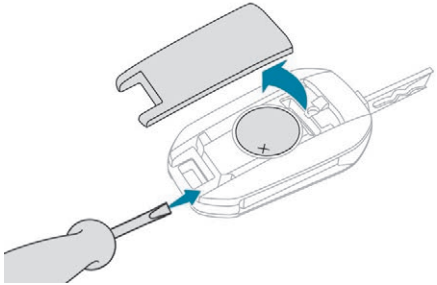
Changing the battery

If the battery is flat, you will be informed by lighting of this warning lamp in the instrument panel, an audible signal and a message in the screen.

The replacement battery is available from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

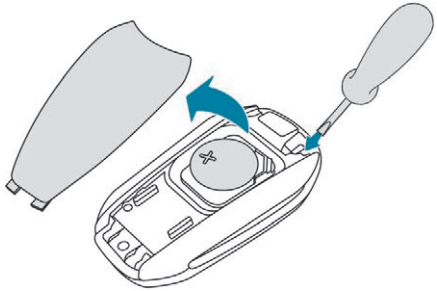
With remote control key

Battery type: CR 1620/3 volts.



With Keyless Entry and Starting

Battery type: CR 2032/3 volts.



☞ Unclip the cover by inserting a small screwdriver in the slot.

☞ Remove the cover.

☞ Remove the flat battery from its compartment.

☞ Fit the new battery into its compartment observing the original fitting direction.

☞ Clip the cover onto the casing.

The remote control must be reinitialised after replacing the battery.
For more information on reinitialising the remote control, refer to the corresponding section.

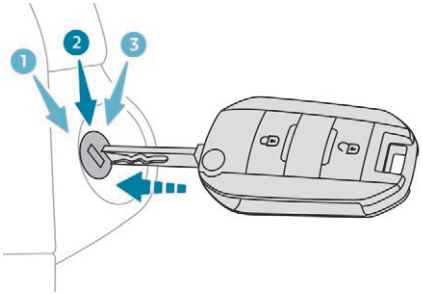
Do not throw away the remote control batteries, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment.
Take them to an approved collection point.

Reinitialising the remote control

Following replacement of the battery or in the event of a remote control fault, it may be necessary to reinitialise the remote control.

If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

With remote control key



☞ Switch off the ignition.

☞ Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition)**.

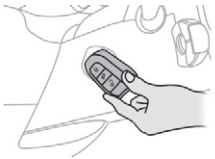
☞ Immediately press the closed padlock button for a few seconds.

☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the switch.

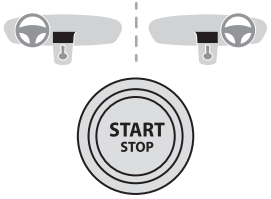
The remote control is fully operational again.

With Keyless Entry and Starting

☞ Place the key in the lock to open your vehicle.



- Place the remote control against the back-up reader on the steering column and hold it there until the ignition is switched on.
- With a manual gearbox, place the gear lever in neutral, then fully depress the clutch pedal.
- With an automatic gearbox, select mode **P**, then fully depress the brake pedal.



- Switch on the ignition by pressing the "**START/STOP**" button.

The remote control is now fully operational again.

Lost keys, remote control
Go to a PEUGEOT dealer, taking with you the vehicle's registration certificate, your personal identification documents and if possible, the label bearing the key code.
The PEUGEOT dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

Remote control
The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.
Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. You may stop it from working and the remote control would have to be reinitialised.
The remote control does not operate when the key is in the ignition, even when the ignition is switched off.

Locking the vehicle
Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.
As a safety precaution (with children on board), remove the key from the ignition or take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

Electrical interference
The Keyless Entry and Starting remote control may not operate if close to certain electronic devices: telephone, laptop computer, strong magnetic fields, etc.

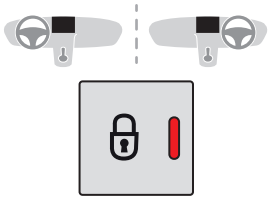
Anti-theft protection
Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.
Don't forget to turn the steering to engage the steering lock.

When purchasing a second-hand vehicle
Have the key codes memorised by a PEUGEOT dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones which can start the vehicle.

Accumulations (water, dust, grime, salt, etc.) on the inner surface of the door handle may affect detection.
If cleaning the inner surface of the door handle using a cloth does not restore detection, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
A sudden splash of water (stream of water, high pressure jet washer, …) may be identified by the system as the desire to open the vehicle.

Central locking/unlocking

This function allows the doors to be locked or unlocked simultaneously from inside the vehicle.



When locking/deadlocking from the outside
When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the red indicator lamp flashes and the button is inactive.
- ☞ After normal locking, pull one of the interior door controls to unlock the vehicle.
- ☞ After deadlocking, it is necessary to use the remote control, Keyless Entry and Starting or the integral key to unlock the vehicle.

Manual mode



☞ Press this button to lock/unlock the vehicle.

Driving with the doors locked could make it difficult for the emergency services to enter the vehicle in an emergency.

If one of the doors is open, the central locking from the inside does not function. This is signalled by a mechanical noise from the locks.
If the boot is open, only the locking of the other doors is carried out. The indicator lamp in the button remains off.

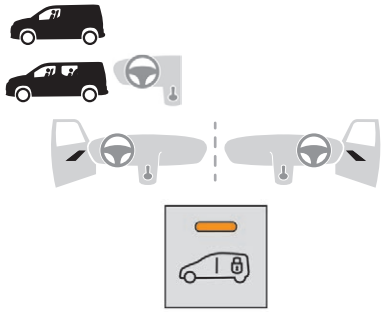
When locking from inside, the door mirrors do not fold.

The indicator lamp also goes off when unlocking one or more accesses.

Automatic mode

This is the automatic central locking of the vehicle when driving, also called anti-intrusion security.
For more information on **Anti-intrusion security**, refer to the corresponding section.

Locking/unlocking the loading area



This button is unavailable if the vehicle has been locked or deadlocked from outside (using the key, the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting, according to equipment) or if any of the doors are still open.

For more information on the **Key**, and, in particular, on programming the selective locking of the loading area, refer to the corresponding section.

Manual mode



Cab and **loading area** selectivity deactivated.



☞ Press this button to lock (indicator lamp comes on)/unlock (indicator lamp goes off) the **vehicle**.



Cab and **loading area** selectivity activated.



☞ Press this button to lock (indicator lamp comes on)/unlock (indicator lamp goes off) the **loading area**.

Driving with the doors locked may render access by the emergency services to the passenger compartment more difficult in an emergency.

The indicator lamp goes off when unlocking one or more doors of the **loading area**.
With the ignition off and the vehicle fully locked, the indicator lamp goes off for energy economy reasons.

Automatic mode

The **loading area** is always locked when driving.

To deactivate the automatic locking function, go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Anti-intrusion security

This system allows automatic simultaneous locking of the doors and boot as soon as the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

Operation

If one of the doors or the boot is open, the automatic central locking does not take place.



This is signalled by the sound of the locks rebounding, accompanied by illumination of this warning lamp in the instrument panel, an audible signal and the display of an alert message.

Activation/Deactivation

You can activate or deactivate this function permanently.

☞ With the ignition on, press the central locking button until an audible signal is triggered and a corresponding message of confirmation is displayed.

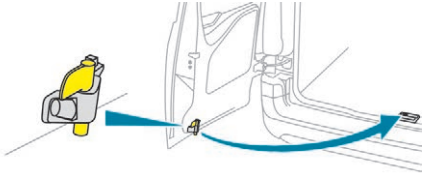
The state of the system stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

Driving with the doors locked may render access by the emergency services to the interior difficult in an emergency.

Carrying long or voluminous objects
If you want to drive with the boot open, you should press the central locking button to lock the doors. Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the locks will rebound and the alerts mentioned above will appear.
Pressing the central locking button unlocks the vehicle.
Above 6 mph (10 km/h), this unlocking is temporary.

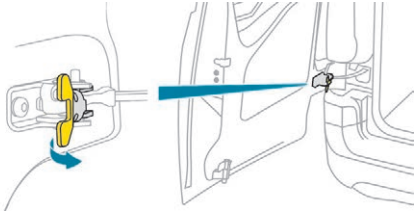
Side-hinged doors

Keeping the left-hand door closed with the right-hand door open



It is possible to drive with the right-hand door open, to enable the transportation of long loads.
The **left-hand** door is kept closed by the distinctive "yellow" lock, positioned at the base of the door.
This closed door must not be used to retain loads.
Driving with the right-hand door open is a special dispensation. Please comply with the usual safety instructions on how to warn other drivers.

Opening to approximately 180°



If fitted to your vehicle, a check strap system allows the doors to be opened from about 90° to about 180°.

☞ Pull the yellow control when the door is open.

The check strap will engage again automatically on closing.

General recommendations for the sliding side doors

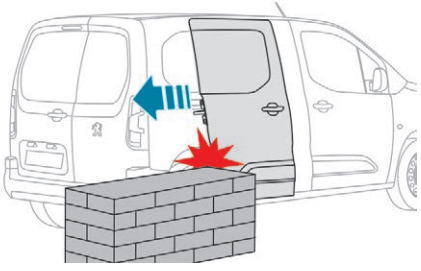
The doors must only be operated when the vehicle is stationary.
For your safety and for that of your passengers, as well as for correct operation of the doors, you are strongly advised not to drive with a door open.
Always check that it is safe to operate the door and, in particular, be sure not to leave children or animals near the door controls without supervision.
The audible warning, illumination of the "door open" warning lamp and the message in the multifunction screen are there to remind you. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to deactivate these warnings.
Lock your vehicle when using an automatic car wash.

! Before opening or closing or performing any movement of the doors, ensure that no person, animal or object is in the door frame or can block the desired movement, inside or outside the vehicle.
If this advice is not followed, injuries or damage may occur if a person or an object is trapped or caught.

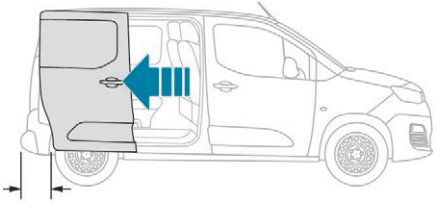
! Take care not to block the guide space on the floor to allow the door to slide correctly.
As a safety measure and for functional reasons, do not drive with the sliding side door open.

i To hold the sliding side door in the open position, open the door fully to engage the locking device (located at the bottom of the door).

The doors and the overall dimensions of the vehicle

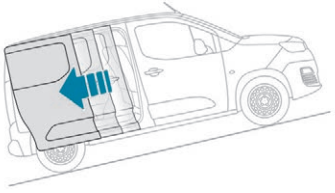


When open, a door projects beyond the body. Be sure to take this into account when you park alongside a wall, a post or a high kerb, etc.

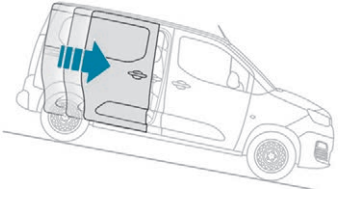


i When open, a door never projects beyond the rear bumper.

On a steep slope



If your vehicle is on a slope, with the front of the vehicle facing up, open the door with care. The door may open more quickly due to the incline. On a steep slope, guide the side door manually to help it to close.



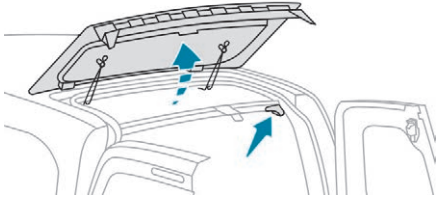
If your vehicle is on a slope, with the front of the vehicle facing down, the door may not stay open and may close again **violently**. Always ensure that you keep hold of it to prevent it closing again accidentally.

! In the case of a steep slope, the door may be driven by its own weight and as a consequence may open or close **violently**.
Take care not to leave the vehicle on a steep slope with the door(s) open without supervision. If this advice is not followed, injuries or damage may occur if a person or an object is trapped or caught.

Rear roof flap



This roof flap at the rear is compatible only with side-hinged doors.



To open the rear roof flap:
- ☞ Lift the black paddle of the toggle.
- ☞ Relax the toggle by pressing on the rear roof flap (downwards) then release the hook.
- ☞ Lift the rear roof flap.
- ☞ Move past the point of resistance to lock the rear roof flap with the support props.

! Never drive without the props in place.

To close the rear roof flap:
- ☞ Check that the support bar is properly secured.
- ☞ Lower the rear roof flap.
- ☞ While pressing on the rear roof flap (downwards), take the two spring rings and then place the hook in its housing.
- ☞ Lower the black paddle to lock the rear roof flap.

Locking the rear roof flap ensures tight contact with the seal and guarantees sealing with no noise.

Support bar

A support bar is available for transporting long loads, after opening the rear roof flap.

- ☞ Fold back the support bar by lifting the lever.
- ☞ Guide it to the door pillar.
- ☞ Support the long loads to be transported, lift them and reposition the support bar with one hand.
- ☞ Ensure that it is secured correctly by pressing the handle downwards past the point of resistance and secure the loads firmly.

The side supports can be used as hooking points.

Never attach any load to the rear roof flap.

i The rear bumper has been reinforced to serve as a step when entering the vehicle.

! Never drive without the support bar in place.
The rear doors will only lock when the support bar is installed.
When the rear roof flap is open, take care when driving where height is restricted.
Never rest loads directly on the rear doors.
Comply with the usual indications for warning other drivers.
Reserve the use of the rear roof flap for short journeys.

Alarm



System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins.

Self-protection function
The system checks for the disconnection of any of its components.
The alarm is triggered if the battery, button or siren wiring is disconnected or damaged.
For all work on the alarm system, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Exterior perimeter

The system checks whether the vehicle is opened.
The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open one of the doors or the bonnet.

Interior volumetric



(without partition)

The system checks for any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment.
The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.



(with partition)

The system only checks the variation in volume inside the **cab**.
The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window or enters the **cab**.
It will not be triggered if someone enters the **loading area.**

If your vehicle is fitted with Additional Heating/Ventilation, volumetric monitoring is not compatible with this system.
For more information on **Additional Heating/Ventilation**, refer to the corresponding section.

Anti-tilt monitoring

The system checks for any change in the attitude of the vehicle.
The alarm is triggered if the vehicle is lifted or moved.

When the vehicle is parked, the alarm will not be triggered if the vehicle is knocked.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

Activation

- Switch off the engine and exit the vehicle.
- Lock the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The monitoring system is active: the red indicator lamp in the button flashes every second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.

Following an instruction to lock the vehicle, the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after 5 seconds and the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring after 45 seconds.

If an opening (door, boot or bonnet) is not closed properly, the vehicle is not locked but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after 45 seconds at the same time as the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring.

Deactivation

☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control.

or

☞ Unlock the vehicle with the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

When the vehicle automatically locks itself again (as happens if a door or the boot is not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking), the monitoring system is also reactivated automatically.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases such as:

- leaving a pet in the vehicle,
- leaving a window or sunroof partially open,
- washing your vehicle,
- changing a wheel,
- having your vehicle towed,
- transport by ship.

Deactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

☞ Switch off the ignition and within 10 seconds press the alarm button until its red indicator lamp is on fixed.

☞ Get out of the vehicle.

☞ Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

Only the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated; the red indicator lamp in the button flashes every second.

To be taken into account, the deactivation must be carried out every time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

☞ Deactivate the perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle with the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

☞ Reactivate all monitoring by locking the vehicle with the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The red indicator lamp in the button once again flashes every second.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for 30 seconds.

Depending on the country of sale, certain monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times consecutively.

When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system, rapid flashing of the red indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, the flashing stops immediately.

Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- ☞ unlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock,
- ☞ open the door; the alarm is triggered,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the alarm stops; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock.

Malfunction

When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the red indicator lamp in the button indicates a malfunction of the system. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

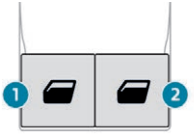
Automatic activation

(Depending on the country of sale)

The system is activated automatically 2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed.

- ☞ To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control or unlock the vehicle using the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

Electric windows



1. Left electric window control.
2. Right electric window control.

Manual mode

Press or pull the control, without going past the point of resistance. The window stops as soon as the control is released.

Automatic mode

Press or pull the control fully, beyond the resistance point. The window opens or closes completely when the switch is released. Pressing the switch again stops the movement of the window. The electric window functions are deactivated for approximately 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.

Safety anti-pinch

If your vehicle is fitted with the safety anti-pinch function, when the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and partially lowers.

In the event of unwanted opening of the window on closing, press the control until the window opens completely. Within 4 seconds, pull the control until the window closes.
The safety anti-pinch does not operate while doing this.

Reinitialisation

Following reconnection of the battery, the anti-pinch safety function must be reinitialised.

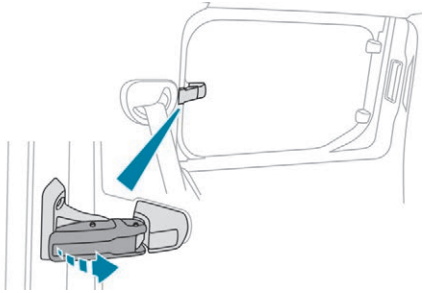
- ☞ Lower the window fully, then raise it, it will rise in steps of a few centimetres each time the control is pressed.
- ☞ Repeat the operation until the window is fully closed.
- ☞ Continue to pull the control upwards for at least one second after reaching this position, window closed.

! The safety anti-pinch does not operate while doing this.

! Always remove the key when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.
In the event of contact during operation of the windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the control concerned.
When operating the passenger electric window controls, the driver must ensure that no one is preventing correct closing of the windows.
The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly.
Be aware of children when operating the windows.

Tilting rear door windows

Opening

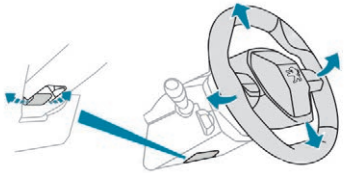


☞ Turn the lever outwards.
☞ Push it fully to secure the window in the open position.

Closing

☞ Pull the lever to release the window.
☞ Turn the lever fully inwards to secure the window in the closed position.

Steering wheel adjustment



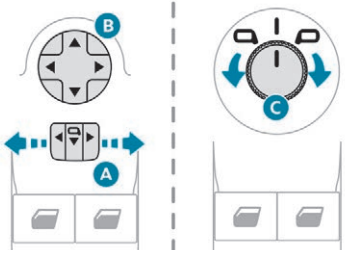
- **When stationary**, pull the control lever to release the steering wheel.
- Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- Lower the control lever to lock the steering wheel.

! As a safety precaution, these operations must only be carried out while the vehicle is stationary.

Mirrors

Door mirrors

Adjustment



- Move control **A** or turn control **C** (depending on the version you have) to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- Move control **B** or **C** (depending on the version you have) in any of the four directions to adjust.
- Return control **A** or **C** (depending on the version you have) to its centre position.

! As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the blind spots.
The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear.
Take this into account when assessing the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Manual folding

You can manually fold the mirrors (parking obstruction, narrow garage, etc.)

- Turn the mirror towards the vehicle.

Electric folding

If your vehicle is fitted with this function, the mirrors can be folded electrically from the inside, with the vehicle parked and the ignition on:



- Place control **A** in the centre position.
- Pull control **A** back.

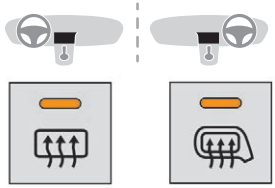
From the outside, lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.

Electric unfolding

The electric unfolding of the mirrors is via the remote control or the key when unlocking the vehicle. Unless folding was selected with control **A**, pull the control back again to the central position.

i The folding/unfolding on locking/unlocking can be deactivated. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
If necessary, it is possible to fold the mirrors manually.

Heated mirrors



☞ Press this button.

i For more information on **Rear screen demisting – defrosting**, refer to the corresponding section.

Rear view mirror

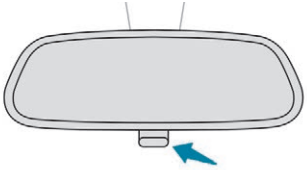
Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlights of other vehicles, etc.

Manual model

Adjustment

☞ Adjust the mirror so that the mirror is directed correctly in the "day" position.

Day/night position



☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.

☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

Automatic "electrochrome" model

This system automatically and progressively changes between day and night use by means of a sensor measuring the light coming from the rear of the vehicle.

i In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

General recommendations for the seats

! For safety reasons, seat adjustments must only be made when the vehicle is stationary.

! Folding or unfolding the seat backrests must only be done with the vehicle stationary.

! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is no object or person in the way, preventing full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if they are in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

! Do not place hard or heavy objects on the backrests forming a table. They could become dangerous projectiles in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

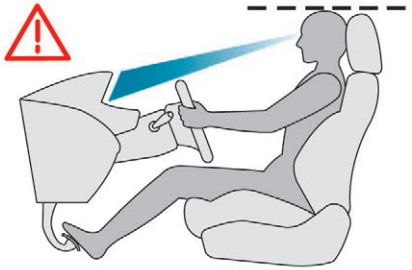
- Do not remove a head restraint without stowing it; secure it to a support inside the vehicle.
- Check that the seat belts remain accessible to the passenger and easy to fasten.
- Passengers must never take their seat without adjusting and fastening their seat belt.

! Before carrying out the manoeuvres, check that nothing and no one is obstructing the moving elements and their locking.
To avoid sudden folding, take care to hold the backrest and support it until it is horizontal.
Never put your hand underneath the seat cushion to guide the seat downwards or upwards, you could get your fingers trapped. Place your hand on the grip/strap (depending on equipment) at the top of the seat cushion.

! Please note: an incorrectly latched backrest compromises the safety of passengers in the event of sudden braking or an impact.
The contents of the boot may be thrown forward – risk of severe injury!

Front seats

PEUGEOT i-Cockpit

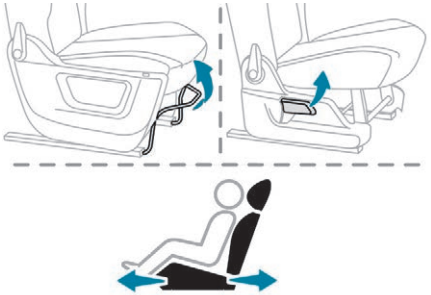


Before going out on the road and to benefit from the ergonomic layout of the PEUGEOT i-Cockpit, adjust in the following order:
- the height of the head restraint,
- the seat backrest angle,
- the seat cushion height,
- the longitudinal position of the seat,
- the depth and then the height of the steering wheel,
- the rear view mirror and door mirrors.

i Once these adjustments have been made, ensure that from your driving position you can see the "head-up" instrument panel clearly, over the reduced diameter steering wheel.

Adjustments

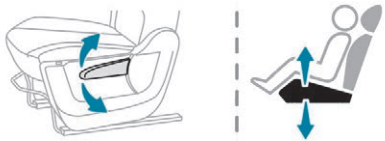
Forwards-backwards



☞ Raise the control and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

Height

(driver only)



☞ If fitted to your vehicle, pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, as many times as necessary to obtain the position required.

For more information on the **Seat belts**, refer to the corresponding section.

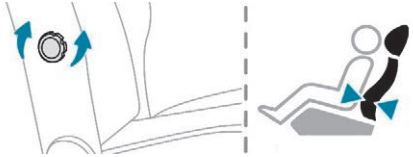
Tilting the backrest



☞ Push the control backwards then use your weight and your legs to adjust the backrest.

Lumbar

(driver only)



☞ Turn the knob manually to obtain the desired level of lumbar support.

Armrest





☞ To access the vertical position, raise the armrest until it locks.

☞ Lower the armrest to return it to the position for use.

It is possible to remove the armrest of the passenger seat.

Removing the armrest

☞ Raise the armrest into the vertical position.

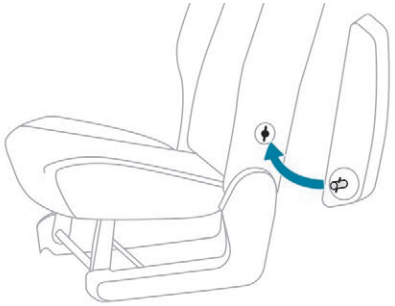


☞ Push the shaft of the armrest towards the backrest.

☞ While holding it in this position, rotate the armrest towards the rear.

☞ Pull the armrest and it will come away from the backrest.

Refitting the armrest



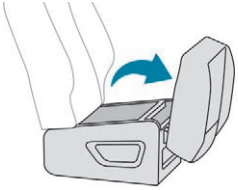
☞ Slot the armrest into the backrest, ensuring that you position the bayonets in line with the holes.

☞ Push the shaft of the armrest towards the backrest.

☞ While holding it in this position, rotate the armrest towards the front.

The armrest is once again secured onto the backrest.

Storage compartment under the seat



☞ Lift the passenger's seat cushion to access the storage compartment.

Heated seat control



Press the switch.
The temperature is controlled automatically.
Pressing a second time stops operation.

With the 2-seat front bench seat, the driver's seat control switches on or switches off the heating of the outer seat of the bench seat.

Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.
Reduce the intensity of the heating as soon as possible.
When the seat and passenger compartment have reached an adequate temperature, you can stop the function; reducing the consumption of electrical current reduces fuel consumption.

! Prolonged use at the highest setting is not recommended for those with sensitive skin.
There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (illness, taking medication, etc.).
There is a risk of overheating the system if material with insulating properties is used, such as cushions or seat covers.
Do not use the system:
- if wearing damp clothing,
- if child seats are fitted.

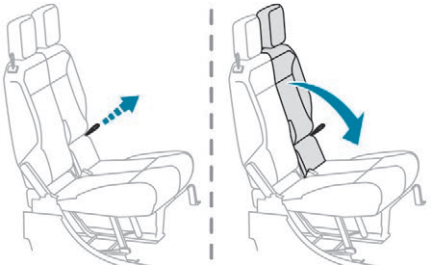
To avoid breaking the heating element in the seat:
- do not place heavy objects on the seat,
- do not kneel or stand on the seat,
- do not place sharp objects on the seat,
- do not spill liquids onto the seat.

To avoid the risk of short-circuit:
- do not use liquid products for cleaning the seat,
- never use the heating function when the seat is damp.

2-seat front bench seat

Central seat

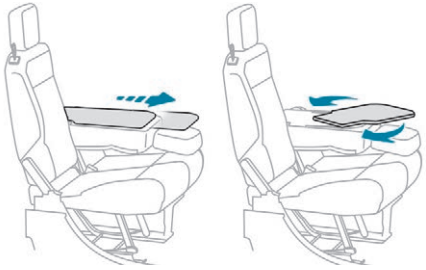
Table position



☞ To lower the backrest, pull the tongue under the lower edge of the seat.



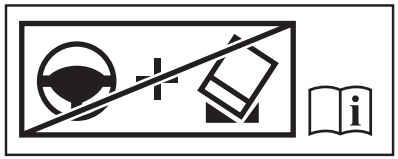
The backrest of the central place on the bench seat tilts to form a working surface and thus obtain a mobile office (when stopped).



Your vehicle may also be fitted with a pivoting table.

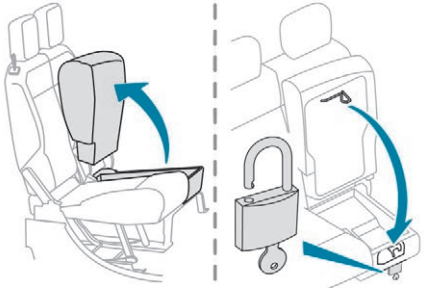
☞ To straighten the backrest, stow the table then guide it until it locks.

During operations, take care not to jam the tongue under the seat cushion.



! Never use the table while the vehicle is moving.
Any object on the table will become a dangerous projectile that could cause injury in the event of sudden braking or collision.

Storage compartment under seat

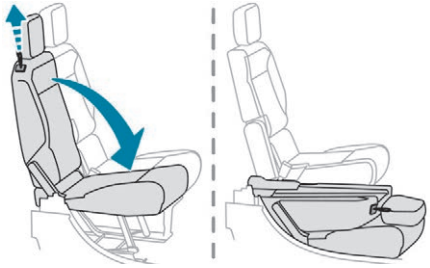


☞ Lift the central seat to access the storage compartment. This space can be secured by fitting a padlock (not supplied).

! Each time you lock the seat in the sitting position, make sure that passengers have access to the seat belt end pieces and the associated straps.

Side seat

Retractable position



☞ Pull the tongue on the top edge of the seat near the head restraint to tilt and guide the assembly.

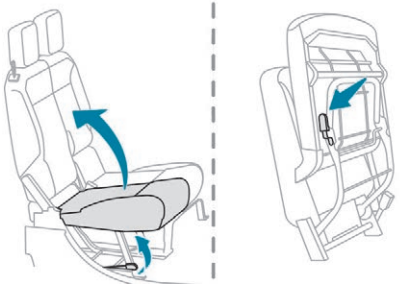
It is placed in the floor of the front seat and thus forms a continuous flat floor with the loading space.

This position allows transporting long cargo inside the vehicle with the doors closed.
When retracted, the maximum weight on the backrest is 50 kg.

To replace the seat, lift the backrest until the seat locks into position on the floor.

Never put your hand underneath the seat cushion to guide the seat downwards or upwards, you could get your fingers trapped. **Always just use the strap.**
Before carrying out these manoeuvres, check that nothing and nobody is obstructing the moving elements and their locking.

Folded position



☞ Lift the yellow crank at the base of the seat to unlock and lift the assembly into folded position (seat raised against the backrest) until it locks.

This position allows the transport of high loads inside the cab.

To replace the seat, push on the yellow crank under the seat and lower the assembly until the seat locks into position on the floor.

Never put your hand underneath the seat cushion to guide the seat downwards or upwards, you could get your fingers trapped. **Place your hand on the front of the seat cushion.**
Before carrying out these manipulations, check that nothing and nobody is obstructing the moving elements and their locking.

Rear bench seat

For safety reasons, seat adjustments must only be made when the vehicle is stationary.

Folding the backrests

First steps:

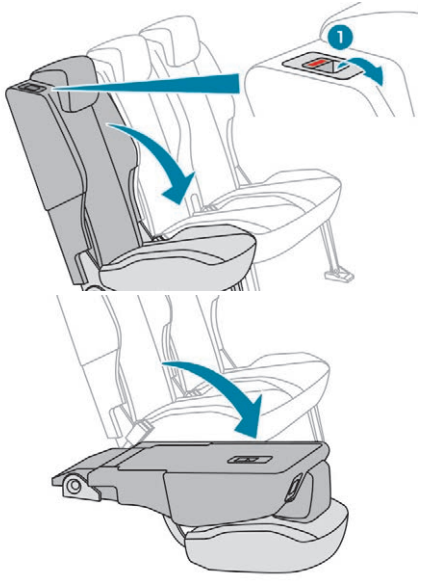
☞ lower the head restraints,

☞ if necessary, move the front seats forward,

☞ check that nothing or no person might interfere with the folding of the backrests (clothing, luggage, etc.),

☞ check that the outer seat belts are lying flat on the backrests.

The folding of the backrest is accompanied by a slight lowering of the corresponding seat cushion.
When the backrest is released, the red indicator is visible in the release grips on the outer seats.



☞ Turn backrest release grip **1**.

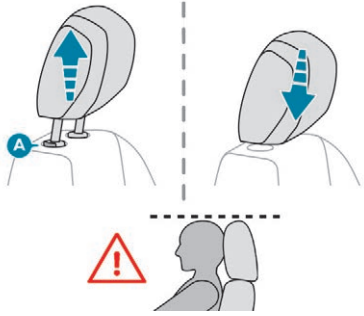
☞ Guide the backrest down to the horizontal position.

Repositioning the backrests

! First check that the outer seat belts are lying vertically flat alongside the backrest latching rings.

- ☞ Put the backrest in the upright position and push it firmly to latch it home.
- ☞ Check that the red indicator in the release grip **1** is no longer visible.
- ☞ Ensure that the outer seat belts are not trapped during the manoeuvre.

Adjusting the height of the head restraint



- ☞ To fit it, pull it upwards as far as possible (notch).
- ☞ To remove it, press the lug **A** and pull it upwards.
- ☞ To put it back in place, engage the head restraint rods in the openings keeping them in line with the seat backrest.
- ☞ To lower it, press the lug **A** and push down on the head restraint at the same time.

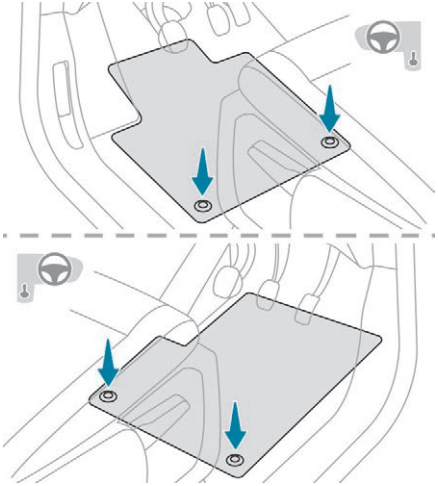
! The head restraint has a frame with notches which prevents it from lowering; this is a safety device in case of impact. **The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.** Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be fitted and correctly adjusted.

! Never drive with passengers seated at the rear when the head restraints are removed or not in the high position; the head restraints must be in place and in the high position.

i For more information on the **Seat belts**, refer to the corresponding section.

Interior fittings

Mats



Fitting

When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side, use only the fixings provided. The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

Removing

To remove the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ move the seat as far back as possible,
- ☞ unclip the fixings,
- ☞ remove the mat.

Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:

- position the mat correctly,
- reattach the fixings by pressing,
- check that the mat is secured correctly.

! To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used.
- never place one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/speed limiter.

The mats approved by PEUGEOT have two fixings located below the seat.

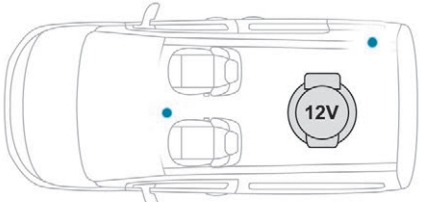
Overhead storage unit



It is located above the sun visors and can be used to store various objects.

12 V socket(s)

(Depending on version.)



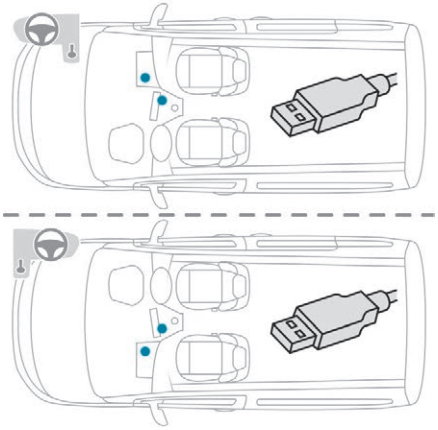
- To connect a 12 V accessory (maximum power: 120 watts), lift the cover and plug in the correct adapter.

! Do not exceed the maximum power rating of the socket (otherwise there is a risk of damaging your portable device).

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by PEUGEOT, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

USB port(s)

(Depending on version.)



The ports allow the connection of a portable device, such as an iPod®-type digital audio player, to charge the device.

They also allow the audio files which are sent to your audio system to be read and played via the vehicle's speakers.

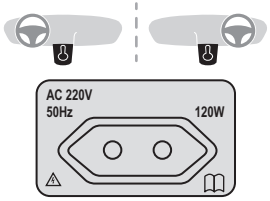
These files can be managed using the steering mounted controls or those of the touch screen.

When the USB port is used, the portable device charges automatically.
A message is displayed if the power drawn by the portable device exceeds the current supplied by the vehicle.
For more information on how to use this equipment, refer to the **Audio equipment and telematics** section.

They also allow a smartphone to be connected by MirrorLink™, Android Auto® or CarPlay® so that certain smartphone applications can be used on the touch screen.

To achieve the best results, it is necessary to use a cable made or approved by the device manufacturer.
These applications can be managed using the steering mounted controls or those of the audio system.

220 V/50 Hz power socket



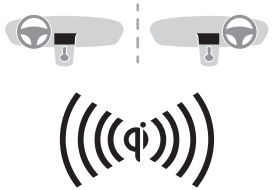
A 220 V/50 Hz socket (max. power: 120 W) is installed on the side of the central storage compartment.
This socket works with the engine running, as well as in STOP mode of Stop & Start.

- Remove the cover.
- Check that the indicator lamp is on and green.
- Connect your multimedia or other electrical device (telephone charger, laptop computer, CD-DVD player, bottle warmer, etc.).

In the event of a fault with the socket, the green indicator lamp flashes.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Connect only one device at a time to the socket (no extension lead or multi-socket connector).
Connect only devices with class II insulation (shown on the device).
Do not use a device with a metal case (electric shaver, etc.).
As a safety measure, when electrical consumption is high and when required by the vehicle's electrical system (particular weather conditions, electrical overload, etc.), the current supply to the socket will be cut off; the green indicator lamp goes off.

Wireless smartphone charger



It allows the wireless charging of a portable device, such as a smartphone, using the principle of magnetic induction, based on the Qi 1.1 standard.
The portable device to be charged must be compatible with the Qi standard, either by design or by using a compatible holder or shell.
The charging zone is identified by the Qi symbol.

Operation

The charger works with the engine running and in STOP mode of Stop & Start.
Charging is managed by the smartphone.

For versions with Keyless Entry and Starting, operation of the charger may be interrupted when opening a door or switching off the ignition.

Charging

- First ensure that the charging zone is clear of other articles.
- Place a portable device in the middle of the charging zone.



- Once the portable device is detected, the charge indicator lamp comes on in green.
- Charging of the portable device's battery then starts.
- Once the portable device's battery is fully charged, the charge indicator lamp goes off.

! The system only supports charging one portable device at a time.

!



Do not leave any metal objects (coins, keys, vehicle remote control, etc.) in the charging area while a device is being charged – Risk of overheating or interrupting the charging process!

Checking operation

The state of the charge indicator lamp allows the operation of the charger to be monitored.

Charge indicator lamp	Meaning
Off	Engine switched off. No compatible portable device detected. Charging finished.
Fixed, green	Compatible portable device detected. Charging...
Flashing, orange	Foreign object detected in the charging zone. Portable device not well centred in the charging zone.
Fixed, orange	Fault with the portable device's battery meter. Temperature of the portable device's battery too high. Charger fault.

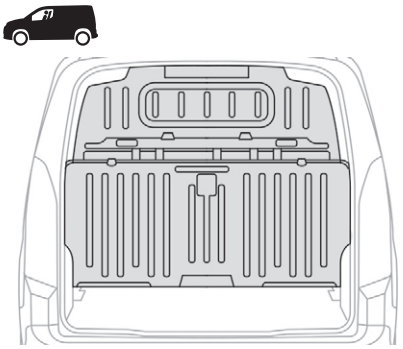


If the indicator lamp is lit orange:
- remove the portable device, then place it back in the middle of the charging zone.

or
- remove the portable device and try again in a quarter of an hour.

If the problem persists, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

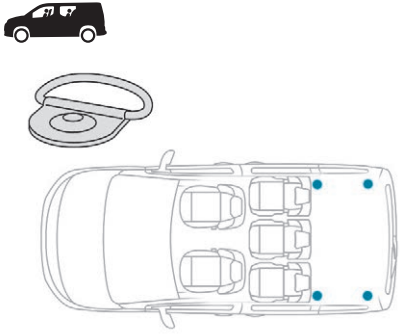
Load restraint

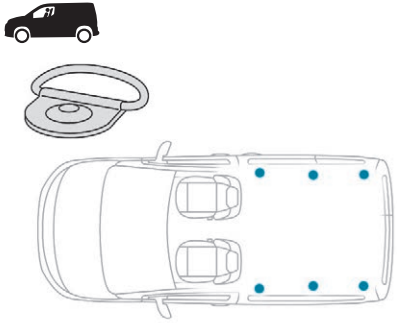


On the floor, behind the front seats, a vertical partition protects the driver and front passengers against the risk of load movement. Steel or glass partitions separate the loading area from the cab.

! When washing your vehicle, never clean the inside directly using a water jet.

Stowing rings





Use the stowing rings on the rear floor to secure your loads.
As a safety precaution in case of sharp braking, you are advised to place heavy objects as far forwards towards the cab as possible.
It is recommended that the load be secured firmly using the stowing rings on the floor.

! When washing your vehicle, never clean the inside directly using a water jet.

Recommendations on loading

! The weight of the load must comply with the Gross Train Weight (GTW).
For more information on **Engine technical data and towed loads**, refer to the corresponding section.

! If you are using a carrying system (roof bars/roof rack), comply with the maximum loads associated with this system.
For more information on **Roof bars/Roof rack**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Make sure that the size, shape and volume of the loads carried are compatible with the highway code and safety regulations and do not impair the driver's field of vision.

! The load must be evenly distributed in the loading area so as not to interfere with driving the vehicle.
Place the load close to the side panels, or even push it against the side panels between the wheel arches.
However, it is recommended that heavy objects are placed as close to the cab as possible as a precaution in case of sharp braking.

! Firmly secure all parts of the load using the stowing rings on the floor of the loading area.
For more information on the **Interior fittings** and in particular on the stowing rings, refer to the corresponding section.

! To avoid the risk of injury or accident, the load must be made stable so that it cannot slide, tip over, fall or be projected. To do this, use only retaining straps that conform to the current standards (DIN, for example).
For more information on putting straps in place, refer to the manufacturer's user guide.
There must not be any open space between the components of the load.
When there is the risk of the load sliding, there must not be any open space between the load and the panels of the vehicle.
As well as the straps, optimise the stability of the load with stable handling equipment (wedges, rigid blocks of wood or padding).

! When washing your vehicle, never clean the inside directly using a water jet.

For the Multi-Flex bench seat and the Crew cab

! Do not place sharp or pointed objects in the protective cover to avoid damaging it.

! **Do not place objects on the dashboard.**



Deactivate the front passenger airbag when carrying long objects.

For more information on **Deactivating the front passenger airbag**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Avoid placing short or heavy loads in the protective cover; use the loading area whenever possible.

! 

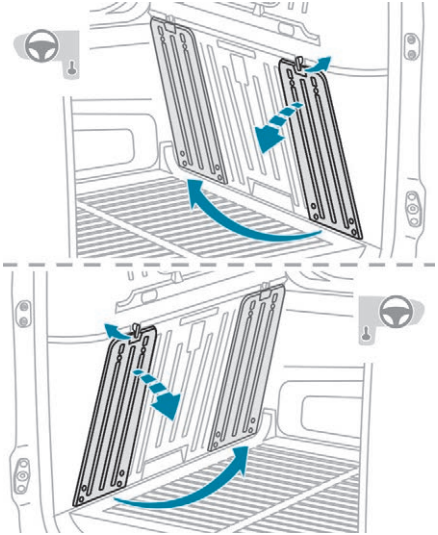
Avoid anchoring loads or hanging items on the wall of the partition.
For your safety, make sure that small objects do not slip through the gaps of about 3 cm between the partition and the vehicle's bodywork.

Multi-Flex bench seat

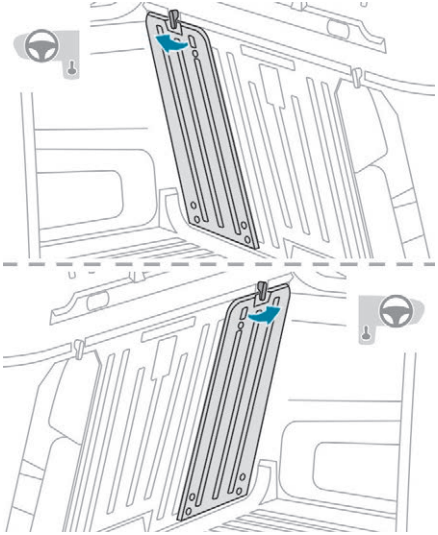


It has the 2-seat front bench seat and a removable flap.
For more information on the **2-seat front bench seat**, refer to the corresponding section.
A partition located on the floor behind the front seats protects the driver and front passengers against the risk of load movement.
A movable flap on this partition can be removed to allow long items to be loaded.
A protective cover is provided in the vehicle to ensure that long items can be transported in complete safety.

Remove the flap

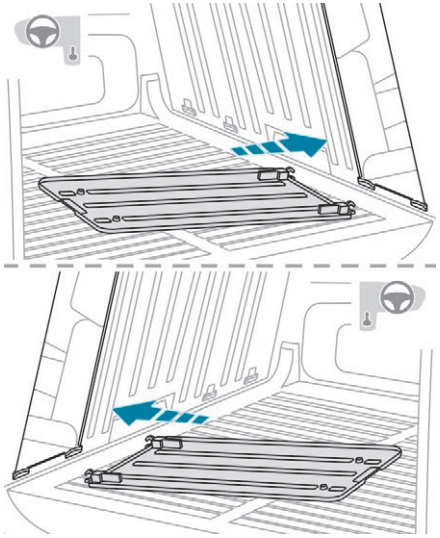


☞ While holding the flap with one hand, turn the control at the top of the flap with the other hand to release it.
☞ Lower the flap to remove it from its housing.

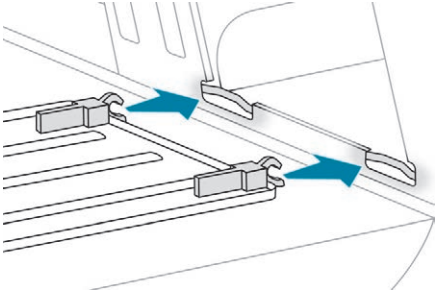


☞ Stow it behind the driver's seat, turning the control at the top of the flap upwards to lock it.

Refitting the flap



☞ Tilt the flap, yellow hinges pointing downwards.

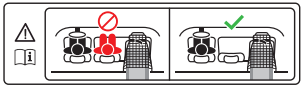


☞ Put the hinges in their housing then press down fully (to avoid vibrations).

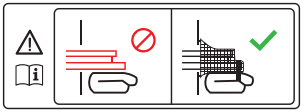
☞ With one hand lift the flap to close it again, then with the other hand turn the control at the top of the flap to secure it.

Positioning the protective cover

! Each time the backrest of the outer seat is folded down and the partition flap is open, the protective cover must be installed.

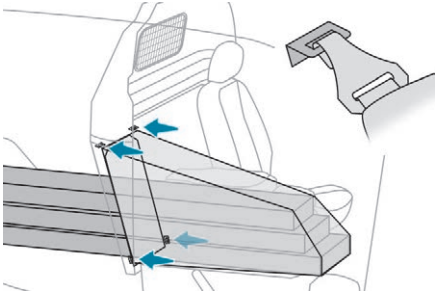


! No passengers must be allowed to sit in the central seat if the backrest of the right-hand outer seat is lowered and the partition flap is open.



! When loading long objects, take care to install the protective cover correctly. Read the following procedure carefully.

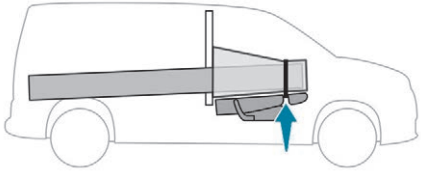
☞ Fold down the outer passenger seat backrest.



☞ Install the protective cover by securing the 4 snap hooks of the cover at the 4 locations on the partition.

☞ Pull out the head restraint rods from the folded backrest, leaving two notches visible.
☞ Load the objects.

The maximum load permitted on the folded backrest is 100 kg.

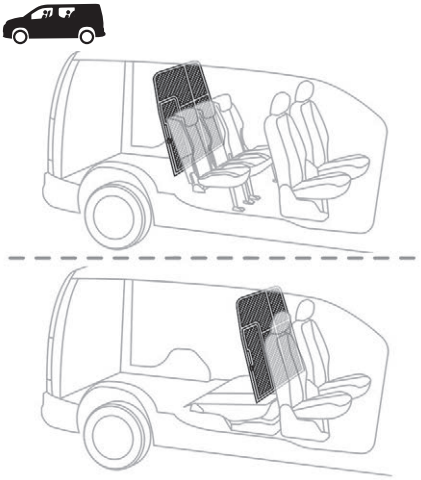


☞ Place the strap of the cover around the head restraint.
☞ Tighten the strap using the adjustable section in order to correctly retain the items that have been loaded inside the cover.

You can leave the protective cover in position after use.

Regularly check the condition of the protective cover.
When signs of wear and tear appear, contact a PEUGEOT dealer to have it replaced by a protective cover that meets the specifications and qualities required by PEUGEOT and your vehicle.

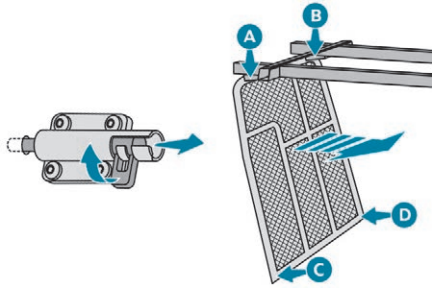
Crew cab



A movable partition that can be placed behind the 2nd or 1st row of seats protects the driver and passengers against the risk of load movement.
A hatch on the partition can be opened to allow long items to be carried.
A protective cover is provided in the vehicle to ensure that long items are carried in complete safety.

Moving the partition

Moving the partition forwards



☞ Fold the backrests of the row 2 seats and check that they are properly folded.
If necessary, adjust the position of the 1st row seats (move them forwards).
☞ Release the upper latches **A** and **B**.
☞ Check that latches **C** and **D** are fully retracted.
☞ Slide the partition forwards.
☞ Lock the lower latches **C** and **D** then check that the pins are fully engaged in their housings.
☞ Lock the upper latches **A** and **B**.

Moving the partition backwards

☞ Release the upper latches **A** and **B**.
☞ Release the lower latches **C** and **D**.
☞ Slide the partition backwards.
☞ Lock the upper latches **A** and **B**.
☞ Return the backrests of the row 2 seats to their positions.

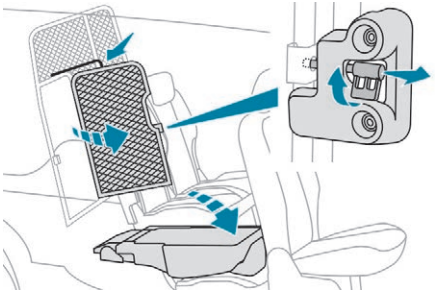
The upper stops may be adjusted if:
- A great deal of effort is needed to move the upper latches **A** and **B**.
- There is noise while driving, caused by excessive free play.

During locking of the partition behind the row 2 or row 1 seats, an engagement noise tells you that the upper latches are closed.
A visible mark and a coloured mark show you the position of the latches.

The partition must not be moved with the latches out – Risk of scratches or damage to the plastic trims!

The partition must never be removed to convert the vehicle from a commercial vehicle to a private vehicle.
This would pose a risk to the safety of users due to the absence of a child lock on the boot door (obligatory on private vehicles).

Opening/closing the hatch

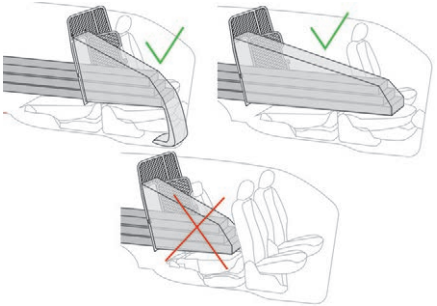


☞ Open/close the hatch using the lock.
☞ Use the stay to keep it in the open position.

Always close the hatch and straighten the backrest of the outer passenger seat(s) (depending on the position of the partition) if you are not carrying any long loads.

Avoid placing any load on the crossbar of the hatch threshold. If possible, place the load on the folded backrests of the seats.

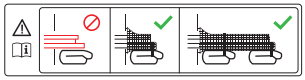
Positioning the protective cover



The **protective cover must be installed** each time the backrest of the outer seat is folded down and the partition hatch is open.



Do not allow any passenger to sit in the row 1 outer seat if the backrest of the outer seat behind it in row 2 is folded down and the hatch is open.
Do not allow any passenger to sit in the row 2 central seat if the backrest of the outer seat is folded down and the hatch is open.

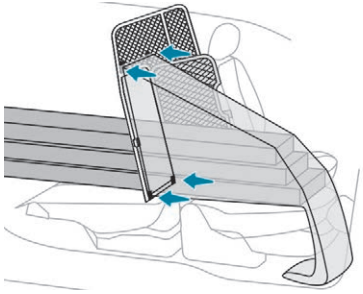


When loading long objects, take care to install the protective cover correctly. Read the following procedure carefully.

☞ Fold the backrest of the outer passenger seat(s) (depending on the position of the partition).

For more information on the **Rear bench seat**, and especially on folding the backrests, refer to the corresponding section.

For more information on the **2-seat front bench seat**, and especially the retracted position of the outer seat, refer to the corresponding section.



☞ Install the protective cover by securing the 4 snap hooks of the cover at the 4 locations on the partition.

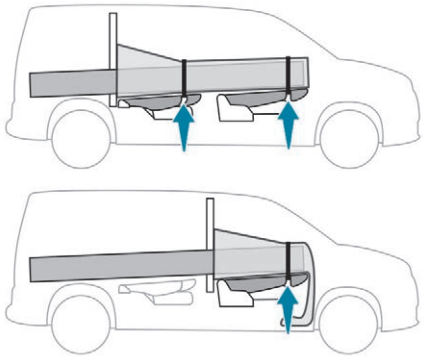
☞ Pull out the head restraint rods from the folded backrest(s) of the outer seat(s) (depending on the position of the partition), leaving 2 notches visible.

☞ Load the objects.

Avoid placing heavy loads on the folded backrest of row 1. If possible, place heavy loads on the floor.
The maximum load permitted on each of the folded backrests of row 2 is 80 kg.

It is normal for excess protective cover to be seen when the partition is positioned behind row 1.

☞ Put this excess protective cover in the space under the glove box.



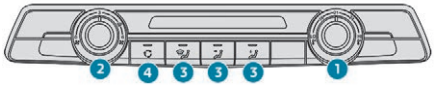
☞ Position the strap(s) around the head restraint(s) (depending on the position of the partition).

☞ Tighten the strap(s) using the adjustable section in order to correctly retain the items that have been loaded inside the cover.

You can leave the protective cover in position after use.

Regularly check the condition of the protective cover.
When signs of wear and tear appear, contact a PEUGEOT dealer to have it replaced by a protective cover that meets the specifications and qualities required by PEUGEOT and your vehicle.

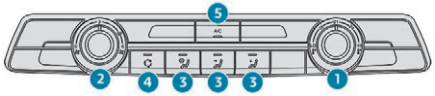
Heating



1. Temperature.
2. Air flow.
3. Air distribution
4. Recirculation of interior air.

Manual air conditioning

The air conditioning system only operates with the engine running.



1. Temperature.
2. Air flow.
3. Air distribution
4. Recirculation of interior air.
5. Air conditioning on/off.

Air flow

☞ Turn the thumbwheel **2** to obtain a comfortable air flow.

> If you place the air flow control to the **minimum** position (off), the temperature in the vehicle will no longer be controlled. A slight air flow can still be felt however, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

Temperature

☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** from "**LO**" (cold) to "**HI**" (hot) to adjust the temperature to your requirements.

Air distribution



Windscreen and side windows.



Central and side vents.



Footwells.

The air distribution can be adapted by combining the corresponding buttons.

Air conditioning

With the engine running, the air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It allows you:
- in summer, to lower the temperature,
- to increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

On/off

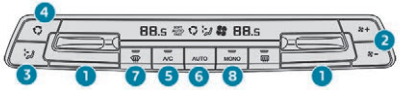
☞ Press button **5** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.

When the air conditioning is in operation, to cool the air more quickly, you can use interior air recirculation for a few moments by pressing button **4**. Then return to the intake of exterior air.

> The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is set to off.

> Switching the system off may result in some discomfort (humidity, misting).

Dual-zone automatic air conditioning



1. Left-hand side/right-hand side temperature
2. Air flow.

3. Air distribution.
4. Recirculation of interior air.
5. Air conditioning on/off.
6. Automatic comfort mode.
7. Visibility programme.
8. "Mono" function.

Automatic comfort mode

☞ Press the "**AUTO**" button **6** successively.

The active mode appears in the display screen, as described below:

AUTO SOFT	Provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.
AUTO	Offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation.
FAST AUTO	Provides dynamic and effective air flow.

ⓘ When the engine is cold, the air flow will only reach its optimum level gradually to prevent too much cold air being distributed.
In cold weather, it favours the distribution of warm air to the windscreen, the side windows and the footwells only.

Manual mode

If you wish, you can make a different choice from that offered by the system by changing a setting. The other functions will still be automatically managed.
The "**AUTO**" symbol disappears if you change a setting.

Deactivating the system

☞ Press button **2** "**-**" until the fan symbol disappears.

This action switches off all of the functions of the system.
Temperature is no longer controlled. A slight air flow can still be felt, however, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

☞ Press button **2** "**+**" to switch the system on again.

Temperature

The driver and front passenger can each set the temperature to suit their requirements. The value shown on the display is a level of comfort, not a temperature in Celsius or Fahrenheit.

☞ Push button **1** down to decrease the value or up to increase it.

ⓘ A setting of around 21 provides optimum comfort. Depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal.
In addition, it is recommended that you avoid a left/right setting difference of more than 3.

ⓘ On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort value setting, there is no need to alter the value displayed in order to reach the required level of comfort. The system compensates automatically and corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

ⓘ For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, it is possible to exceed the minimum value 14 or the maximum value 28.
☞ Push button **1** down until "**LO**" is displayed or up until "**HI**" is displayed.

"Mono" function

The comfort setting for the passenger's side can be indexed to the driver's comfort setting (mono-zone).

☞ Press corresponding button **8** to activate/deactivate the function.

The indicator lamp in the button is on when the function is activated.

The function is deactivated automatically if a passenger uses the temperature control.

Visibility programme

☞ Press "**Visibility**" button **7** to demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows more quickly.

The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.

☞ Press "**Visibility**" button **8** again to stop the programme.

Or

☞ Press "**AUTO**" button **6** to return to the automatic comfort programme.

Air conditioning

With the engine running, the air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It allows you:

- in summer, to lower the temperature,
- to increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

On/off

☞ Press button **5** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.

When the air conditioning is in operation, to cool the air more quickly, you can use interior air recirculation for a few moments by pressing button **4**. Then return to the intake of exterior air.

i The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is set to off.

! Switching the system off may result in some discomfort (humidity, misting).

Air distribution

☞ Press button **3** successively to direct the air flow towards:

- the windscreen, the side windows and the footwells,
- the footwells.
- the central vents, the side vents and the footwells,
- the windscreen, the side windows, the central vents, the side vents and the footwells,
- the central and side vents,
- the windscreen and side windows (demisting or defrosting).

Air flow

☞ Press buttons **2** to increase/decrease the air flow.

The symbol for air flow (a fan) appears. It is filled in or emptied progressively according to the value requested.

Recirculation of interior air

The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of mist on the windscreen and side windows. Recirculation of the interior air isolates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and fumes.

i This allows hot or cold air to be delivered more quickly when required.

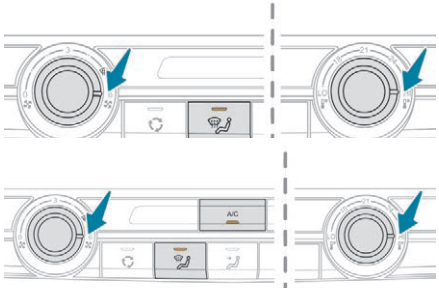
☞ Press button **4** to recirculate the interior air/permit the intake of exterior air.

! Avoid prolonged use of recirculation of the interior air – risk of misting and deterioration of air quality!

Front demist – defrost

These markings on the control panel indicate the control positions for rapid demisting or defrosting of the windscreen and side windows.

Heating or manual air conditioning

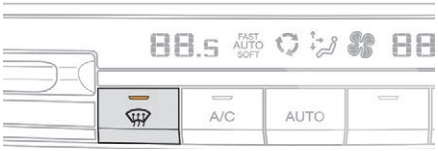


☞ Put the air flow, temperature and distribution controls to the appropriately marked position.

A/C

☞ For air conditioning, press this button; its indicator lamp comes on.

Dual-zone automatic air conditioning



☞ Press this button to demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows as quickly as possible.

The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.

☞ To turn it off, press this button again or press "**AUTO**".

AUTO

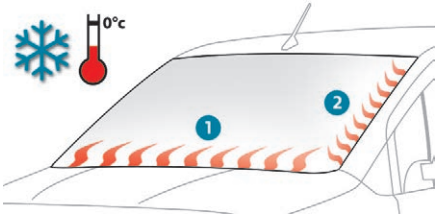
The system is reactivated with the values prior to the deactivation.

Heated windscreen and washer jets
For more information on the **Wiper control stalk** and in particular the heated windscreen and washer jets, refer to the corresponding section.

With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, STOP mode is not available.

Heated windscreen

Depending on country of sale.
This function heats the windscreen in cold weather.



In area **1**, the heating makes ice melt and allows you to free the wiper blades.
In area **2**, the heating improves visibility by preventing the accumulation of snow when the wipers are operating.

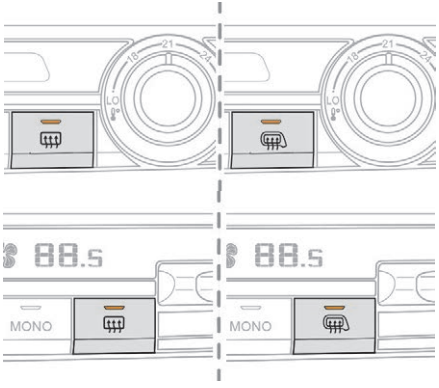
Switching on



☞ With the engine running, press this button; its indicator lamp comes on.

The period of operation depends on the exterior temperature.
Pressing this button again switches the function off; its indicator lamp goes off.

Rear screen and/or door mirrors demisting – defrosting



On/Off



☞ Press this button to switch on/off the defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors (if fitted to your vehicle).

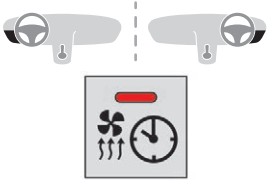


☞ Press this button to switch on/off the defrosting of the door mirrors.

Switch off the defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as appropriate, as lower current consumption results in reduced fuel consumption.

Rear screen demisting – defrosting can only be operated when the engine is running.

Additional Heating/ Ventilation



Heating

This is an additional and separate system which heats the passenger compartment and improves defrosting performance.



This indicator lamp is illuminated when the system is programmed.
This indicator lamp flashes while the heating is in operation or when you carry out a remote start via the remote control.
This indicator lamp goes off at the end of the heating cycle or when the heating is stopped using the remote control.

Ventilation

This system allows ventilation of the passenger compartment with exterior air to improve the temperature experienced on entering the vehicle in summer.

Programming

With Bluetooth® audio system



☞ Press the **MENU** button to access the main menu.



☞ Select "**Pre-heat./Pre-ventil.**".

☞ Select "**Activation** " and, if necessary for programming, select "**Parameters** ".

☞ Select "**Heating** " to heat the engine and passenger compartment or "**Ventilation** " to ventilate the passenger compartment.



☞ Select:
- the 1st clock to programme/preset the time at which the pre-heating temperature will be reached,
- the 2nd clock to programme/preset a second time at which the pre-heating temperature will be reached,

i Using these two clocks and depending on the season you can, for example, select one or the other start time.
A message in the screen confirms your choice.

With PEUGEOT Connect Radio

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Then press "**Programmable heating/ventilation**".



☞ Select the "**Status**" tab to enable/disable the system.



☞ Select the "**Other settings**" tab to choose the "**Heating**" to heat the engine and passenger compartment or "**Ventilation**" to ventilate the passenger compartment.

☞ Then programme/preset the time at which the pre-heating temperature will be reached for each selection.

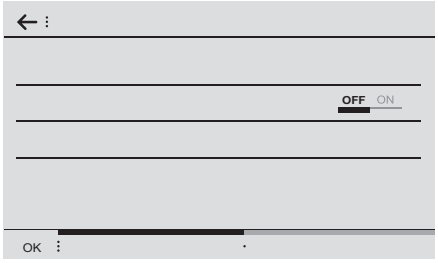
Press this button to save.

With PEUGEOT Connect Nav

☞ Press the "**Applications**" menu.

☞ Press the "**Vehicle Apps**" tab.

☞ Press "**Programmable heating/ventilation**".



☞ Press the "**Status**" tab to activate/deactivate the system.



- Select the "**Heating**" mode to heat the engine and passenger compartment or "**Ventilation**" to ventilate the passenger compartment.
- Then programme/preset the time at which the preheating temperature will be reached for each selection.
- Finally, press "**OK**" to confirm.

Long range remote control

(Depending on version.)
This enables you to switch the heating in the passenger compartment on or off from a distance. The range of the remote control is about 0.6 miles (1 km) in open country.



Switching on

- Press and hold this button to start the heating immediately.

The indicator lamp in the remote control comes on in green for about 2 seconds to confirm that the signal has been received by the vehicle.

Switching off

OFF

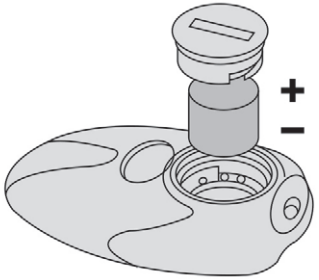
- Press and hold this button to stop the heating immediately.

The indicator lamp in the remote control comes on in red for about 2 seconds to confirm that the signal has been received by the vehicle.

i The indicator lamp in the remote control flashes for about 2 seconds if the vehicle has not received the signal.
You should then move to a different location and repeat the command.

Changing the battery

If the indicator lamp in the remote control becomes orange, the state of charge of the battery is low.
If the indicator lamp is not on, the battery is discharged.



- Use a coin to unscrew the cap and replace the battery.

i The maximum heating period is about 45 minutes depending on the climatic conditions.

The additional heating system is powered by the fuel in the vehicle's fuel tank.
Before use, ensure that there is enough fuel in the tank.
If the tank level is on reserve, the system cannot be used.
The ventilation is activated provided that the battery is sufficiently charged.
The heating is activated provided that:
- the battery is sufficiently charged,
- the fuel level is adequate,
- the engine has been started since the previous heating cycle.



Always switch off the additional heating while refuelling – risk of fire or explosion!

To avoid the risks of poisoning or asphyxia, the programmable heating must not be used, even for short periods, in a closed environment such as a garage or workshop which is not equipped with an exhaust gas extraction system.
Do not park the vehicle on a flammable surface (dry grass, dead leaves, paper, etc.) – risk of fire!

Glazed surfaces such as the rear screen or windscreen can become very hot in places.
Never put objects on these surfaces; never touch these surfaces – risk of burns!

Do not throw remote control batteries away as they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.

Advice

In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the operation and maintenance guidelines below:

- To ensure that the air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor located in the back free from obstructions.
- Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located at the top of the windscreen; this is used for regulation of the air conditioning system.
- Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes, once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
- To prevent condensation or deteriorating air quality inside the passenger compartment, you should not deactivate the system for too long or avoid extended operation of the air recirculation system when driving.
- Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.

We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).

- To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly according to the warranty and maintenance record recommendations.
- If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.

If after an extended period parked in the sun, the interior temperature is very high, first ventilate the passenger compartment for a few moments. Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.
The air conditioning system does not contain chlorine and does not present any danger to the ozone layer.

Contains fluorinated greenhouse gas R134A
Depending on version and country of sale, the air conditioning system contains fluorinated greenhouse gas R134A.

The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle when stationary which is perfectly normal.

Stop & Start
The heating and air conditioning systems only work when the engine is running.
To maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment, you may temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system.
For more information on **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

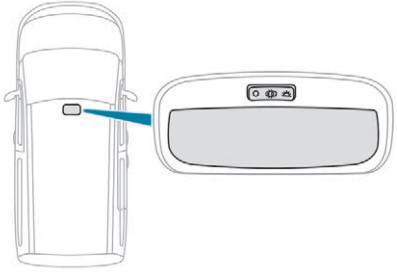
Courtesy lamp

Automatic switching on/off

The front courtesy lamp comes on when the key is removed from the ignition switch.
All of the courtesy lamps come on when the vehicle is unlocked, when one of the corresponding doors is opened and when locating the vehicle using the remote control.
They go off gradually after the ignition is switched on and when the vehicle is locked.

! Take care not to put anything in contact with the courtesy lamp.

Type 1

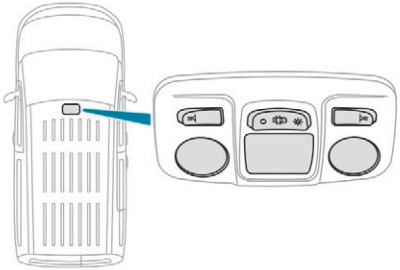


Permanently on, ignition on.

Lights up when one of the front or rear doors is opened.

Permanently off.

Type 2



Front: comes on when one of the front or rear doors is opened (sliding side door and depending on equipment, left-hand side-hinged door or tailgate).

Permanently on, ignition on.

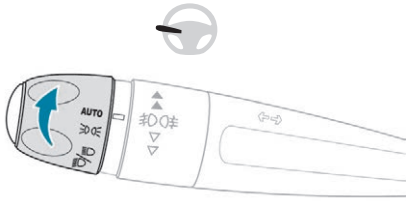
Permanently off.

Individual reading lamp

If fitted to the vehicle, these are switched on and off by means of a manual switch.
With the ignition on, operate the corresponding switch.

Lighting control stalk

Selection of main lighting mode



Turn the ring to align the desired symbol with the marking.

AUTO Automatic illumination of headlamps/ daytime running lamps.

Sidelamps only.

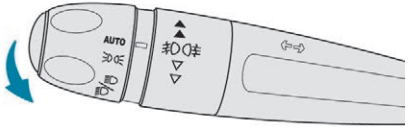
Dipped or main beam headlamps.

Operation of the selected lighting is confirmed by the illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp.

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

Headlamp dipping





Pull the stalk to switch between dipped and main beam headlamps.

In "**AUTO**" mode and when the sidelamps are on, the driver can flash the main beam headlamps by pulling the lever.

Foglamp selection ring

Rear foglamps



They operate with the sidelamps on.

☞ Rotate the ring forwards to switch them on and rearwards to switch them off.

When the lighting is switched off automatically ("**AUTO**" position), the foglamps and the dipped beam headlamps will remain on.

With front and rear foglamps



They operate with the dipped beam headlamps on, in manual or auto mode.

Turn the ring:

- ☞ once forwards to switch on the front foglamps,
- ☞ forwards a second time to switch on the rear foglamps,
- ☞ once backwards to switch off the rear foglamps,
- ☞ backwards a second time to switch off the front foglamps.

If the lamps are switched off automatically ("**AUTO**" position) or the dipped beams are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps remain on.

- ☞ Turn the ring backwards to switch off the foglamps, the sidelamps will then switch off.

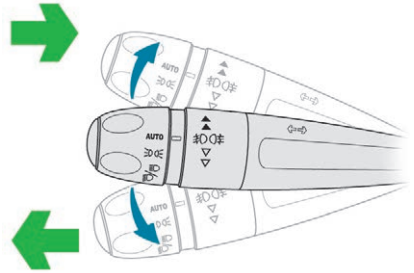
When the lighting is left on
An audible signal when a front door is opened warns the driver that the vehicle's exterior lighting is on, with the ignition off and in manual lighting mode.
In this case, switching off the lighting stops the audible signal.
The lighting goes off when you switch off the ignition, but you can always switch it on again using the lighting control stalk.

Travelling abroad
If using your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the headlamps must be adjusted to avoid dazzling on-coming drivers.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

In good or rainy weather, by both day and night, use of the front foglamps and the rear foglamps are prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or falling snow.
In these weather conditions, it is your responsibility to switch on the foglamps and dipped headlamps manually as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light.
Switch off the front and rear foglamps when they are no longer necessary.

Never look too closely at the luminous beam of LED headlamps: risk of serious eye injury.

Direction indicators (flashers)



- ☞ Left: lower the lighting control stalk passing the point of resistance.
- ☞ Right: raise the lighting control stalk passing the point of resistance.

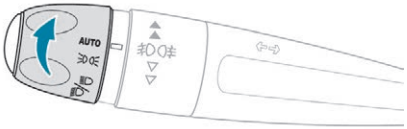
Three flashes

- ☞ Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

Automatic illumination of headlamps

When a low level of ambient light is detected by a sunshine sensor, the number plate lamps, sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They may also come

on if rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windscreen wipers. As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.



- Turn the ring to the "**AUTO**" position. Activation of the function is accompanied by the display of a message.
- Turn the ring to **another position**. Deactivation of the function is accompanied by the display of a message.

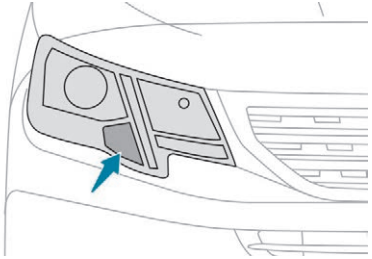
Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction of the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. In this case, the lighting will not come on automatically. Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard or at the top of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror (depending on equipment); the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

Daytime running lamps/ sidelamps



The front lamps light up automatically when the engine starts.

They provide the following functions:

- Daytime running lamps (lighting control stalk at position "**AUTO**" with adequate light level).
- Sidelamps (lighting control stalk "**AUTO**" position with low light levels or "Sidelamps only" or "Dipped/main beam headlamps").

i The LEDs are brighter when operating as daytime running lamps.

Parking lamps

Vehicle side marking by illumination of the sidelamps on the traffic side only.

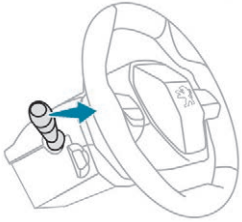
- Depending on version, within one minute of switching off the ignition, operate the lighting control stalk up or down depending on the traffic side (for example, when parking on the right, push the lighting control stalk downwards; the left-hand sidelamps come on).

This is confirmed by an audible signal and illumination of the corresponding direction indicator lamp in the instrument panel.

To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the central position.

Guide-me-home lighting

Manual



Switching on

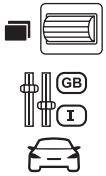
- With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps once using the lighting stalk.
- Another "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

Switching off

Manual guide-me-home lighting goes off automatically at the end of a given period of time.

Automatic

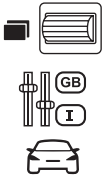
With the ring in the "**AUTO**" position, when the light is poor, the dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.



The activation, deactivation and the duration of the guide-me-home lighting are set in the vehicle configuration menu.

Automatic exterior welcome lighting

With the "Automatic headlamp illumination" function activated, when the light is poor, the sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked.



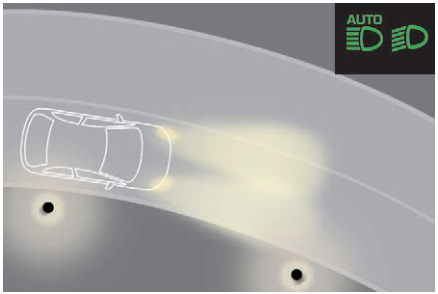
Activation, deactivation and the duration of the exterior welcome lighting are set in the vehicle configuration menu.

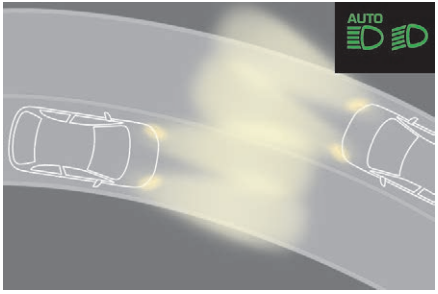
Intelligent beam headlights

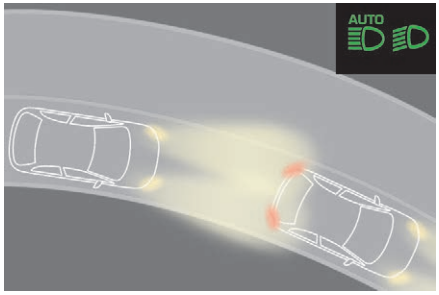
System which automatically changes between dipped and main beam according to the brightness and driving conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windscreen.

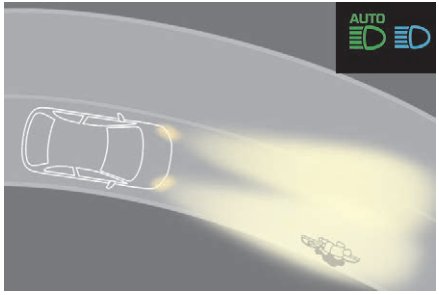
! This system is a driving aid.
The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use for the prevailing conditions of light, visibility, traffic and observation of driving and vehicle regulations.

i The system will be operational as soon as you have exceeded 16 mph (25 km/h).
If the speed drops below 9 mph (15 km/h), the system no longer operates.

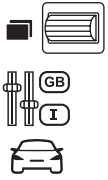








Activation/Deactivation



Activation and deactivation are done via the vehicle configuration menu.

When deactivated, the lighting system changes to "automatic illumination of headlamps" mode. The state of the system stays in the memory when switching off the ignition.

Operation

If the ambient light level is sufficient and/or if the traffic conditions do not allow illumination of the main beam headlamps:



- dipped beam is maintained, these indicator lamps come on in the instrument panel.



If the ambient light level is very low and the traffic conditions permit:



- main beam comes on automatically: these indicator lamps come on in the instrument panel.



When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function.
As soon as the vehicle leaves the area of thick fog, the function reactivates automatically.



This indicator lamp goes off while the function is deactivated.

Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlamp beam, the driver can take over at any time.



☞ Flashing the headlamps pauses the function and the system changes to "automatic illumination of headlamps" mode:

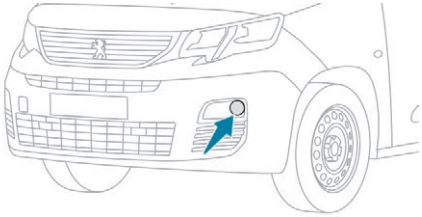
- if the "AUTO" and "Dipped beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to main beam,
- if the "AUTO" and "Main beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to dipped beam.

To reactivate the function, flash the headlamps again.

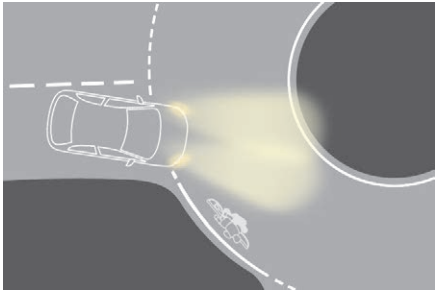
The system may suffer interference or not work correctly:
- under poor visibility conditions (snow, heavy rain, etc.),
- if the windscreen is dirty, misted or obscured (by a sticker, etc.) in front of the camera,
- if the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs.

When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function.
The system is not able to detect:
- road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians,
- vehicles whose lighting is obscured (for example: vehicles running behind a safety barrier on a motorway),
- vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on winding roads, on crossroads.

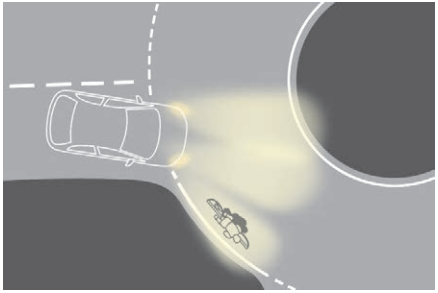
Cornering lighting



If fitted to your vehicle, this system makes use of the beam from a front foglamp to illuminate the inside of a bend, when the main or dipped beam headlamps are on and the vehicle speed is below 25 mph (40 km/h) (urban driving, winding road, junctions, parking manoeuvres, etc.).



Without cornering lighting



With cornering lighting

Switching on

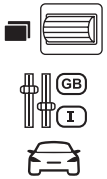
This system starts:
- when the corresponding direction indicator is switched on,

or
- from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.

Switching off

The system does not operate:
- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel,
- above 25 mph (40 km/h),
- when reverse gear is engaged.

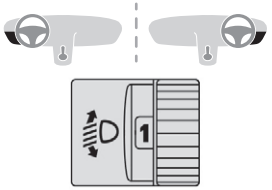
Programming



The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

This system is activated by default.

Headlamp beam height adjustment



To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the height of the halogen headlamps should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

0 Empty.
1 Partial load.
2 Medium load.
3 Maximum authorised load.
4 5 6 Not used.

The initial setting is position **0**.

Wiper control stalk

Programming

Your vehicle may also include some functions that can be activated/deactivated:

- automatic windscreen wipers,
- rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.

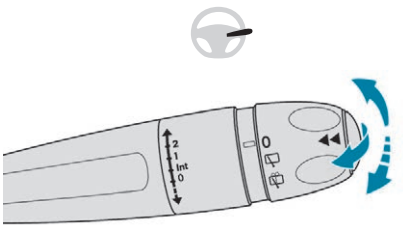
In wintry conditions, remove snow, ice or frost present on the windscreen, around the wiper arms and blades and the windscreen seal, before operating the wipers.

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. Under extremely hot or cold conditions, ensure that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

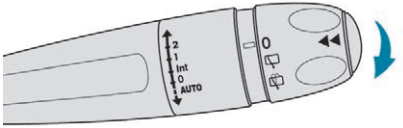
Manual controls

The wipers are controlled directly by the driver.

With manual wiping (intermittent)



With AUTO wiping



Windscreen wipers

Raise or lower the control to the desired position to change the wiping speed.

2 Fast wiping (heavy rain).

1 Normal wiping (moderate rain).

Int Intermittent wiping (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).

0 Off.

or

AUTO Automatic wiping (press down, then release).
Single wipe (pull the stalk briefly towards you).

Front screenwash

☞ Pull the wiper control stalk towards you and hold.

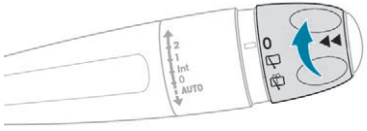
The screenwash and windscreen wiper operate for as long as the control stalk is pulled.
Termination of the screenwash is followed by a final wiping cycle.

i On vehicles fitted with automatic air conditioning, any action on the screenwash control results in temporary closing of the air intake to avoid odours inside the passenger compartment.

i The screenwash jets are integrated in the tips of each arm.
The screenwash fluid is sprayed along the length of the wiper blade. This improves visibility and reduces the consumption of screenwash fluid.
In some cases, depending on the contents or colour of the liquid and on the exterior brightness, the liquid spray may be hardly noticeable.

! To avoid damaging the wiper blades, do not operate the screenwash if the screenwash reservoir is empty.
Only operate the screenwash if there is no risk of the fluid freezing on the windscreen and hindering visibility. Always use a screenwash fluid suitable for low temperatures during the winter period.
Never top up with water.

Rear wiper



Rear wiper selection ring:

0 Off.

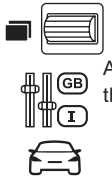
Intermittent wiping (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).

Wash-wipe (set duration).

Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation automatically if the windscreen wipers are operating.

Activation/Deactivation



Activation or deactivation is set via the vehicle configuration menu.

i This system is activated by default.

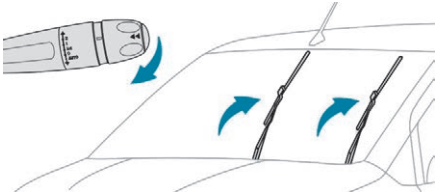
! If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a bicycle carrier on the boot, deactivate the automatic rear wiper.

Special position of the windscreen wipers

This position is used for cleaning or replacement of the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in winter (ice, snow), to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.

To maintain the effectiveness of the wiper blades, it is advisable to:
- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

Before removing a windscreen wiper blade



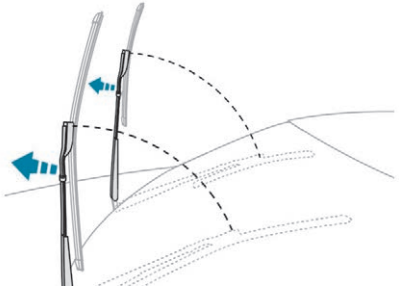
- In the minute following ignition switch-off, any operation of the wiper control stalk will position the wiper blades vertically.
- Proceed to the desired operation or to replacement of the wiper blades.

After refitting a windscreen wiper blade

- To return the wiper blades to their initial position, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper stalk.

Changing a wiper blade

Removing/refitting at the front



- Carry out these wiper blade replacement operations from the driver's side.
- Starting with the wiper blade farthest from you, hold each arm by the rigid section and lift to the stop position.

Do not touch the wiper blade in case you cause irreparable damage.
Do not release them while moving them – Risk of damaging the windscreen!

- Clean the windscreen using a windscreen cleaning fluid.

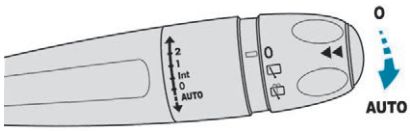
Do not apply "Rain X" type beading products.

- Unclip the worn wiper blade closest to you and remove it.
- Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
- Repeat the procedure for the other wiper blade.
- Starting with the wiper blade closest to you, once again hold the each arm by the rigid section, then fold it carefully, guiding it to the windscreen.

Removing/refitting at the rear

- Hold the arm by the rigid section and lift it to the stop position.
- Clean the rear window using windscreen washing fluid.
- Unclip the worn wiper blade and remove it.
- Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
- Once again hold the arm by the rigid section then fold it carefully, guiding it to the rear window.

Automatic windscreen wipers



The windscreen wipers operate automatically once rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rain without any action on the part of the driver.

Switching on

Give a short downwards push to the control stalk.
A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted.



Depending on version, this symbol appears in the display screen or this indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and a message is displayed.

Switching off



Give the control stalk a brief push downwards or shift the control stalk to a different position (Int, 1 or 2).
This indicator lamp goes off in the instrument panel and a message is displayed.

The automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers must be reactivated by pushing the control stalk downwards, if the ignition has been off for more than one minute.

Malfunction

If a fault occurs with the automatic windscreen wipers, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Do not cover the rain sensor, located at the top of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror (depending on equipment); the associated functions would no longer be controlled.
Switch off the automatic windscreen wipers when using an automatic car wash.
In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

General safety recommendations

! Labels are affixed in different locations on your vehicle. They include safety warnings and vehicle identification information. Do not remove them: they are an integral part of your vehicle.

! For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.

! Depending on country regulations, some safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle, etc.

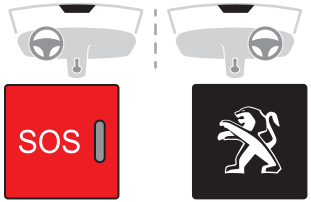
! **We draw your attention to the following points:**

- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not approved by PEUGEOT may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer for information on the range of recommended accessories.
- As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for PEUGEOT dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by PEUGEOT or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the manufacturer will result in the suspension of the legal and contractual warranties.

! **Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters**

Before installing a radio communication transmitter, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer for the specifications of compatible transmitters (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

Emergency or assistance call



Peugeot Connect SOS



In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. The flashing LED and the voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "Peugeot Connect SOS" service*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request; the LED goes off.

The LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established.
It goes off at the end of the call.

"Peugeot Connect SOS" immediately locates your vehicle and contacts you in your own language** , and – if necessary – requests that relevant emergency services be dispatched**.
In countries where the service is not available, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is sent directly to the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, an emergency call is made automatically and independently of the deployment of any airbags.

* In accordance with the general conditions of use for the service available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.

** According to the geographic coverage of "Peugeot Connect SOS", "Peugeot Connect Assistance" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered and PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

Operation of the system

When the ignition is switched on, the indicator lamp comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.
The indicator lamp lights up continuously red: there is a system fault.
The indicator lamp flashes red: replace the back-up battery.
In either case, emergency and assistance calls may not function.
Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

i The system's fault does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

Peugeot Connect Assistance



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.

A voice message confirms that the call has been made**.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.
The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

** Depending on the geographic coverage of "Peugeot Connect SOS", "Peugeot Connect Assistance" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered and telematic services is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

Geolocation



You can deactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing the "Peugeot Connect SOS" and "Peugeot Connect Assistance" buttons, followed by pressing "Peugeot Connect Assistance" to confirm.

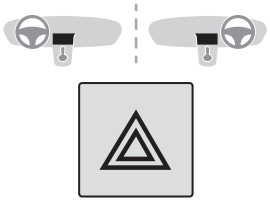
To reactivate geolocation, simultaneously press the "Peugeot Connect SOS" and "Peugeot Connect Assistance" buttons again, followed by a press on "Peugeot Connect Assistance" to confirm.

If you purchased your vehicle outside the PEUGEOT dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modify it to suit your wishes. In a multilingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

For technical reasons and, in particular, to improve the quality of PEUGEOT CONNECT services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

If you benefit from the Peugeot Connect Packs offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the website for your country.

Hazard warning lamps



☞ When you press this red button, all four direction indicators flash.

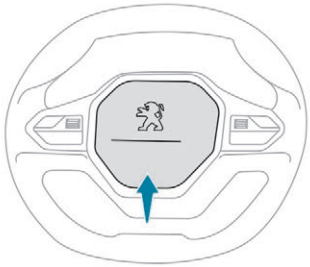
They can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration, as well as when the ABS function is triggered or in the event of an impact, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically. They switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.

☞ You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

Horn



☞ Press the central part of the steering wheel.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

Electronic stability control programme incorporating the following systems:

- Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) and Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBFD).
- Emergency braking assistance (EBA).
- Anti-slip regulation (ASR).
- Dynamic stability control (DSC).
- Automatic post-collision braking (APCB).
- Trailer stability assist (TSA).

Definitions

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

These systems improve the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking and contribute towards improved control in corners, in particular on poor or slippery road surfaces.
The ABS prevents wheel lock in the event of emergency braking.
The electronic brake force distribution system manages the braking pressure wheel by wheel.

Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

In an emergency, this system enables you to reach the optimum braking pressure more quickly and therefore reduce the stopping distance.
It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed. This is felt by a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

This system optimises traction in order to avoid wheel slip by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine. It also improves the directional stability of the vehicle on acceleration.

Dynamic stability control (DSC)

If there is a difference between the path followed by the vehicle and that required by the driver, this system monitors each wheel and automatically acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to return the vehicle to the required path, within the limits of the laws of physics.

Trailer stability assist (TSA)

This system allows control of the vehicle to be retained when towing a trailer, so as to avoid the risk of snaking.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)



The fixed illumination of this warning lamp signals that there is a fault with the ABS.
The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at moderate speed.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.



Illumination of this warning lamp, coupled with the **STOP** and ABS warning lamps, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, signals that there is a fault with the electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).
You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
Call a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

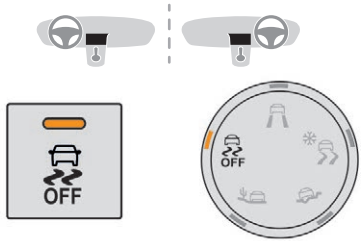
Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.

When braking in an emergency, press very firmly and maintain this pressure.

When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.

After an impact, have these systems checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Dynamic stability control (DSC) and anti-slip regulation (ASR)



Activation

These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started.
As soon as they detect a problem of grip or trajectory, these systems act on the operation of the engine and brakes.

This is indicated by the warning lamp flashing in the instrument panel.

Deactivation/Reactivation

In exceptional conditions (moving a vehicle that is bogged down in mud, stuck in snow, on loose soil, etc.), it may prove useful to deactivate the DSC/ASR systems, so that the wheels can move freely and regain grip.
But it is recommended that the system be reactivated as soon as possible.

These systems are reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched off, or from 30 mph (50 km/h).
However, below 30 mph (50 km/h) you can reactivate them manually.

To deactivate the systems, press this button or turn the dial to this position.

The indicator lamp in the button or dial comes on: the DSC/ASR systems no longer act on the operation of the engine.

To reactivate the system:

Press this button.

Or

Turn the dial to this position.

The indicator lamp in the button or the dial goes off.

Malfunction

Illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, indicates a fault with the system.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the systems checked.

ASR/DSC
These systems offer increased safety in normal driving, but they should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.
It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, black ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.
The correct operation of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations regarding as much the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components as the assembly and repair procedures used by PEUGEOT dealers.
The use of snow tyres is recommended, in order to be able to benefit from the efficiency of these systems in winter conditions.
In this case, it is essential to equip the four wheels with tyres approved for your vehicle.

Post Collision Safety Brake (APCB)

With automatic post-collision braking, in the event of an accident, the ESC system triggers an automatic braking action in order to reduce the risk of cumulative collisions by rebound, for example, if the driver does not react.
Automatic braking intervenes after a frontal, lateral or rear impact.

Conditions for operation

The impact has resulted in the deployment of the airbags or seat belt pyrotechnic pretensioners.
The braking systems and electric functions of the vehicle must remain operational after the collision.

Automatic braking is accompanied by illumination of the vehicle's brake lamps.

The system does not intervene if driver action is detected:
- Accelerator pedal pressed.
- Brake pedal pressed.

The system works within the limits of the laws of physics.
It is the driver's responsibility to continuously adapt the vehicle's speed to the driving and road conditions.

Malfunctions

Braking systems fault



Simultaneous illumination of these two warning lamps.

Airbags or pyrotechnic pretensioning systems fault



Simultaneous illumination of these two warning lamps.

Drive carefully.
Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Trailer stability assist (TSA)

When towing, this system reduces the risk of the vehicle or trailer swaying.

Operation

The system is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.
The electronic stability control (ESC) must not have any faults.

If the system detects oscillations (snaking) in the movement of the trailer at speeds between 35 and 100 mph (60 and 160 km/h), it acts on the brakes to stabilise the trailer and, if necessary, reduces the engine power to slow down the vehicle.



The correction is signalled by the flashing of this indicator lamp in the instrument panel and illumination of the brake lamps.

For information on the weights and towed loads, refer to the "Technical data" section or the registration certificate for your vehicle.
To ensure complete safety while driving with a **Towbar system**, refer to the corresponding section.

Malfunction



Should a fault occur with the system, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

If you continue to tow a trailer, reduce your speed and drive carefully!
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

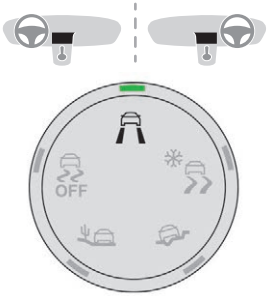
! The trailer stability assist system offers increased safety in normal driving conditions, provided that the recommendations on towing a trailer are observed. It must not encourage the driver to take additional risks, such as towing a trailer in adverse operating conditions (overloading, failure to observe the trailer nose weight, worn or under-inflated tyres, faulty braking system, etc.) or drive at too high a speed.
In certain cases, the swaying of the trailer may not be detected by the ESC system, particularly with a light trailer.
When driving on slippery or poor surfaces, the system may not be able to prevent sudden swaying of the trailer.

Advanced Grip Control

Special patented traction control system which improves driveability on snow, mud and sand. This system, the operation of which has been optimised for each situation, allows you to manoeuvre in most conditions of poor grip (encountered during passenger vehicle use).

Associated with all-season M+S (Mud and Snow) tyres, this system offers a compromise between safety, grip and driveability.
The accelerator pedal should be pressed sufficiently to allow the system to use the power of the engine. Operation at high engine speeds is completely normal.
A five-position selector knob allows you to choose the setting best suited to the driving conditions encountered.
An indicator lamp associated with each mode comes on, accompanied by the display of a message to confirm your choice.

Operating modes



Standard (ESC)



This mode is calibrated for a low level of wheel spin, based on the different levels of grip normally encountered on the road.

i Every time the ignition is switched off, the system automatically resets to this mode.

Snow



This mode adapts its strategy to the conditions of grip encountered for each of the two front wheels on moving off.
(mode active up to 50 mph (80 km/h))

All terrain (mud, damp grass, etc.)



This mode, when moving off, allows considerable spin on the wheel with the least grip to optimise clearing of the mud and to regain grip. At the same time, the wheel with the most grip is controlled in such a way as to transmit as much torque as possible.

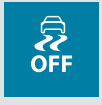
When moving, the system optimises wheel spin to respond to the driver's requirements as fully as possible.
(mode active up to 31 mph (50 km/h))

Sand



This mode allows little spin on the two driving wheels at the same time to allow the vehicle to move forward and limit the risks of getting stuck in the sand.
(mode active up to 75 mph (120 km/h))

! Do not use the other modes on sand as the vehicle may become stuck.

i 

You can deactivate the ASR and DSC systems by turning the knob to the "**OFF**" position.

The ASR and DSC systems will no longer act on the engine operation or the brakes in the event of an involuntary change of trajectory. These systems are reactivated automatically from 30 mph (50 km/h) or every time the ignition is switched on.

! **Recommendations**
Your vehicle is designed principally to drive on tarmac roads but it allows you to occasionally drive on other less passable terrain.
However, it does not permit off-road driving such as:
- crossing and driving on terrain which could damage the underbody or strip away components (fuel pipe, fuel cooler, etc.) due to obstacles or stones in particular,
- driving on terrain with steep gradients and poor grip,
- crossing a stream.

Hill Assist Descent Control

System that provides assistance when descending on loose or soft surfaces (gravel, mud, etc.) or a steep gradient.
This system reduces the risk of slip or loss of control of the vehicle when descending, whether going forward or in reverse.
During a descent, it assists the driver in maintaining a constant speed, depending on the gear engaged, while progressively releasing the brakes.

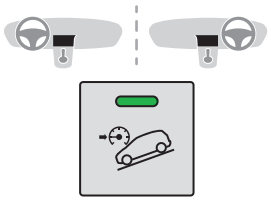
i For the system to activate, the slope must be greater than 5%.
The system can be used with the gearbox in neutral.
Otherwise engage a gear corresponding to the speed to prevent the engine stalling.
With an automatic gearbox, the system can be used with the selector at **N**, **D** or **R**.

! When the system is regulating, the Active Safety Brake system is automatically deactivated.

i The system is not available:
- if the speed of the vehicle is above 43 mph (70 km/h),
- if the speed of the vehicle is being controlled by the Adaptive Cruise Control, depending on the type of gearbox.

Switching on

By default, the system is not selected.
The system's status is not saved when the ignition is switched off.
The driver can select the system when the engine is running, when the vehicle is stationary or moving at speeds up to approx. 30 mph (50 km/h).





☞ At a speed below 30 mph (50 km/h), press this button until its indicator lights up to select the system; this indicator lamp appears in green in the instrument panel.

The system becomes active at a speed below 18 mph (30 km/h).

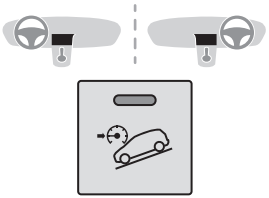
☞ When the vehicle begins its descent, you can release the accelerator and brake pedals; the system regulates the speed:



- if the gearbox is in first or second gear, the speed decreases and the warning lamp flashes rapidly,
- if the gearbox is in neutral or if the clutch pedal is depressed, the speed decreases and the warning lamp flashes slowly; in this case, the maintained descent speed is lower.

During a descent, with the vehicle stationary, if you release the accelerator and brake pedals, the system will release the brakes to set the vehicle gradually in motion.
The brake lamps light up automatically when the system is regulating.
If the speed exceeds 18 mph (30 km/h), regulation is paused automatically, the warning lamp goes back to grey in the instrument panel, but the indicator lamp in the button remains lit.
Regulation resumes automatically when the speed falls below 18 mph (30 km/h) again, and the slope and pedal release conditions are met.
You can depress the accelerator or brake pedal again at any time.

Switching off



☞ Press this button until its indicator lamp goes off; the indicator lamp also goes off in the instrument panel.

Above 43 mph (70 km/h), the system is automatically deactivated; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Malfunction



If a fault occurs with the system, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of a message in the instrument panel.

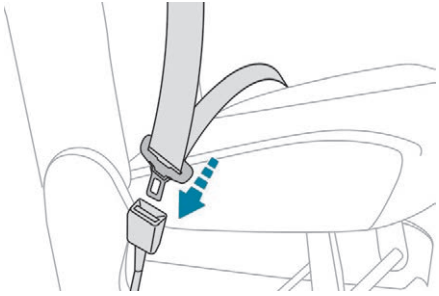
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Seat belts

Front seat belts

The front seat belts are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning and force limiting system.
This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact.
Depending on the severity of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.
The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.
The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, thus improving their protection.

Fastening



- Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- Press the red button on the buckle.
- Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

2-seat front bench seat



If your vehicle is fitted with a front bench seat, ensure that each belt is used with its correct buckle.
Do not interchange the driver's seat belt or buckle with the centre seat belt or buckle.

Rear seat belts





Each of the rear seats is fitted with a seat belt without a pyrotechnic pretensioner and without a force limiter.
Be sure to put the correct seat belt in the correct buckle.
Do not interchange the belts or buckles for the outer seats with the belt or buckle for the centre seat.

Seat belt(s) warning lamp





With individual front seats

On switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on if a seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened.
From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), the warning lamp flashes for 2 minutes, accompanied by an audible signal.
Once these 2 minutes have elapsed, the warning lamp remains on until the driver and/or the passenger fasten their seat belt.

With 2-seat front bench seat (and the driver’s seat)

On switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on if the driver's seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened.
On switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on if a passenger's seat belt is unfastened.
From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), the warning lamp flashes for 2 minutes, accompanied by an audible signal.
Once these 2 minutes have elapsed, the warning lamp remains on until the driver fastens their seat belt.

Advice

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off.

Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.

Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfil their role fully.

The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.

Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.

The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.

The inertia reels have an automatic locking device at the time of a collision, during sudden braking or if the vehicle turns over. You can release the device by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

Advice

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:

- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not show any signs of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.

Have your seat belts checked regularly by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by PEUGEOT dealers.

After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Instructions for children

Use a suitable child seat, if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.

Never allow a child to travel on your lap.

For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

In case of impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact, the pyrotechnic system may be deployed before and independent of the airbags.

Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

In all cases, the airbag warning lamp is lit.

After an impact, get the seat belt system checked and if necessary have it replaced by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

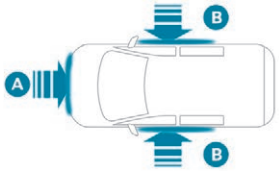
Airbags

System designed to contribute towards improving the safety of the occupants (with the exception of the centre seat in row 2) in the event of violent collisions.
The airbags supplement the action of the force-limiting seat belts.
If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the event of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards better protection of the occupants (with the exception of the centre seat in row 2); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.
This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

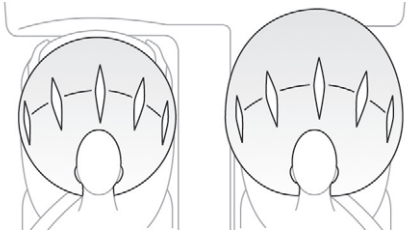
Impact detection zones



A. Frontal impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

Airbag deployment generates slight smoke emissions and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.
Although this smoke is not harmful, sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation.
The noise generated by the deployment of one or more airbags (detonation) may result in mild and temporary loss of hearing.

Front airbags



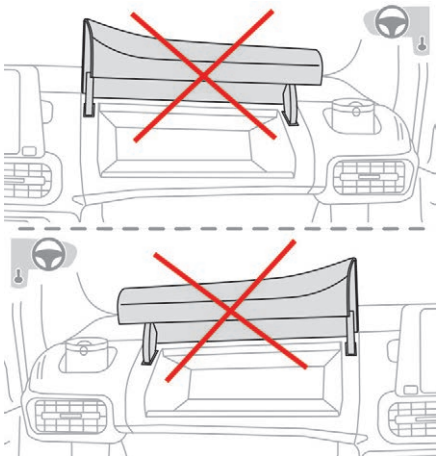
System which protects the driver and passenger(s) in the event of a serious front impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and thorax.

The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger airbag is fitted in the roof.

With the 2-seat front bench seat, the passenger sitting in the centre is also protected.

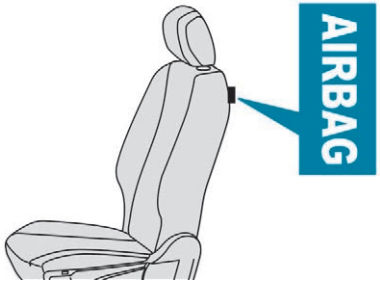
Deployment

They are deployed, except the front passenger(s) airbag if it is deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the frontal impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centre line of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.
The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger(s) side, to cushion their forward movement.



When driving, keep the glove box closed. Otherwise, there is a risk of injury in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Lateral airbags



If fitted to your vehicle, this is a system that protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact, in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest, between the abdomen and head.
Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, door side.

Deployment

They are deployed unilaterally in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The lateral airbag inflates between the front occupant's abdomen and head and the associated door trim panel.

Curtain airbags

If fitted to your vehicle, this is a system that contributes towards greater protection for the driver and passenger in the event of a serious side impact, in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.
Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

With the 2-seat front bench seat, the passenger sitting in the centre is not protected.

Deployment

They are deployed unilaterally in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The curtain airbag inflates between the outer rear passenger and the windows.

In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed.
In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags is deployed.

Advice

For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below.
Adopt a normal and upright sitting position.
Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.
Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object, etc.), nor fix or attach anything close to or in the way of the airbag release trajectory; this could cause injuries during their deployment.
Do not place objects on the dashboard.
Never modify the original definition of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.
After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen, have the airbag systems checked.
All work on the airbag systems must be carried out by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out.
The airbag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

Front airbags
Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.
Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.
Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.
Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.
Do not fix or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, as this could cause injuries when the airbags are deployed.

Curtain airbags
Do not fix or attach anything to the roof, as this could cause head injuries when the curtain airbag is deployed.
If fitted to your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

Lateral airbags
Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment of the lateral airbags. For information on the product range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.
Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backrests (clothes, etc.), as this could cause injuries to the thorax or arm when the lateral airbag is deployed.
Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.
The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.
A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors – risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags!
Such work must only be done by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

General points relating to child seats

The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.
- **Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats.**
- **A child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the rearward-facing position both in the front and in the rear.**

It is recommended that children travel on the **rear seats** of your vehicle:

- **"rearward facing"** up to the age of 3,
- **"forward facing"** over the age of 3.

Ensure that the seat belt is positioned and tightened correctly.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the latter is in firm and steady contact with the floor.
In the front: if necessary, adjust the passenger seat.
At the rear: if necessary, adjust the relevant front seat.

Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

Child seat at the front



When a child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the seat to the **highest position**, in the **rearmost longitudinal position**, **with the backrest straightened**.

"Rearward facing"





The front passenger airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed in case of airbag deployment**.

"Forward facing"



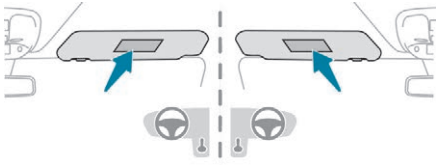


The front passenger airbag must be activated.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag



Warning label – Front passenger airbag

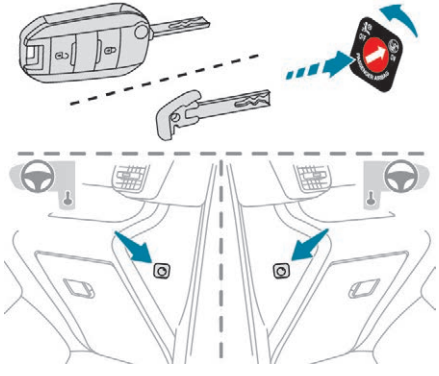


You must comply with the following instruction, repeated on the warning label on both sides of the passenger sun visor:

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

! With the **Multi-Flex bench seat** or the **Crew cab**, deactivate the front passenger airbag when transporting long objects.

Deactivating the passenger airbag



- **With the ignition off**, insert the key in the passenger's airbag deactivation switch, accessible at the side of the glove box when the front passenger door is open.
- Turn it to the **OFF** position.
- Remove it, keeping the switch in this position.

When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes in the seat belt warning lamps display. It stays on while the airbag is deactivated.

! To ensure the safety of your child, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated when you install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, there is a risk of serious or fatal injury to the child if the airbag is deployed.

Reactivating the front passenger airbag

When you remove the child seat, **with the ignition off**, turn the switch to the **ON** position to reactivate the airbag and so assure the safety of your front passenger(s) in the event of an impact.

Malfunction

If this warning lamp on the instrument panel comes on, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

Child seat at the rear

Row 2

"Rearward facing"



When a "rearward facing" child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the rearward facing child seat does not touch the vehicle's front seat.
Adjust the rear seat (row 2) to the fully back position, with the backrest straightened.

"Forward facing"



When a "forward facing" child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the "forward facing" child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.

For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the front seat of the vehicle.

Recommended child seats

Range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three-point seat belt**.

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



L1
"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus"
Installed in the rearward facing position.

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg



L5
"RÖMER KIDFIX"
Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings.
The child is restrained by the seat belt.
Is only installed on the outer rear seats.
The head restraint on the vehicle seat must be removed.

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg



L6
"GRACO Booster"
The child is restrained by the seat belt.
Is only installed on the front passenger seat or on the outer rear seats.

Locations for child seats secured using the seat belt

In accordance with European regulations, the table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using a seat belt and universally approved **(c)** according to the weight of the child and the seating position in the vehicle.



Seat positions			Weight of the child and indicative age			
			Under 13 kg (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	**From 15 to 25 kg** (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	**From 22 to 36 kg** (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old
Cab/Row 1 (a)	With individual seat, passenger seat 		/			
	With bench seat, outer or central passenger seat 	With passenger airbag deactivated "OFF"	**U**			
		With passenger airbag activated "ON"	**X**	**UF**		

Key

(a) ☞ Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing your child on this seat.

(b) ☞ Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Carrycots and "car" infant carriers may not be installed on the front passenger seat(s).

(c) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

U Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing".

UF Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using a seat belt and universally approved "forward facing".

X Seat position not suitable for the installation of a child seat of the weight group indicated.

Advice

! An incorrectly installed child seat compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident.
Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.
Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.
When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of your vehicle. If your passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.
The head restraint must be removed before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat.
Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

! 

Children in the rear
In the rear seats, always leave sufficient space between the front seat and:
- a rearward facing child seat,
- the child's feet for a child seat fitted forward facing.

To do this, move the front seat forwards and, if necessary, move its backrest into the upright position.
For optimal installation of the forward facing child seat, verify that its backrest is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle seat, if possible in contact with it.

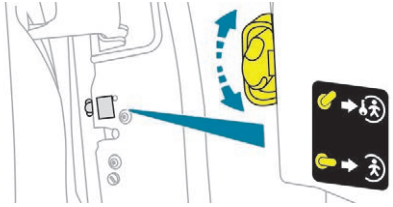
! **Children in the front**
Deactivate the front passenger airbag when a rearward facing child seat is installed on the front passenger seat.
Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

! **Installing a booster seat**
The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.
Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.
We recommend using a booster seat with a backrest equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

! **Additional protections**
To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the child lock.
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.
To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.
As a safety precaution, do not leave:
- a child or children alone and unattended in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

Manual child lock

Mechanical system to prevent opening of the sliding side door using its interior lever.



Locking

Turn the control on the edge of the side door upwards.

Unlocking

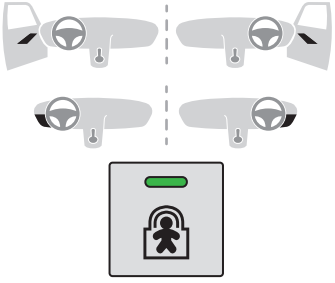
Turn the control on the edge of the side door downwards.

Electric child lock



Remote control system to prevent opening of the rear doors (sliding side door(s), side-hinged rear doors or tailgate) using their interior controls.

Activation/Deactivation



With the ignition on:

- ☞ Press this button; its indicator lamp remains on while the child lock is activated.
  It is still possible to open the doors from the outside.
- ☞ Press this button again; its indicator lamp remains off while the child lock is deactivated.

In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is deactivated (child lock off) automatically.

! Any other state of the indicator lamp indicates a fault with the electric child lock. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control.
Do not drive with the sliding side door open.
Check the status of the child locks each time you switch on the ignition.
Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

Driving recommendations

- Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
- Monitor your environment and keep your hands on the wheel to be able to react to anything that may happen any time.
- Drive smoothly, anticipate the need for braking and maintain a longer safety distance, especially in bad weather.
- Stop the vehicle to carry out operations that require close attention (such as adjustments).
- During long trips, take a break every two hours.

! Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. There is a risk of poisoning and death!
In very severe wintry conditions (temperatures below -23°C), to guarantee correct operation and the longevity of the mechanical elements of your vehicle, engine and gearbox, the engine must be left running for 4 minutes before driving.

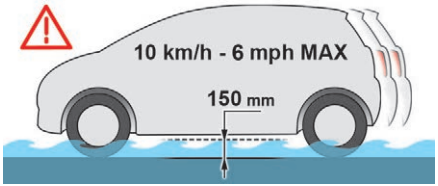
Important!

! Never drive with the parking brake applied – Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!
As the exhaust system of your vehicle is very hot, even several minutes after switching off the engine, never park or run the engine on inflammable surfaces (dry grass, fallen leaves, etc.) – Risk of fire!

! Never leave a vehicle unsupervised with the engine running. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P**, depending on the type of gearbox.

Driving on flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.



If you are obliged to drive on a flooded road:
- check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users,
- deactivate the Stop & Start function,
- drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),
- do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as safety conditions allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads.
If in doubt on the state of your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

In case of towing

! Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and requires extra care from the driver.

Side wind

☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to wind.

Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.
As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towable load on an incline depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature.
In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.

☞ If this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

New vehicle
Do not pull a trailer before having driven at least approximately 620 miles (1,000 kilometres).

Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance. To avoid overheating of the brakes, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Tyres

☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

For more information on **Headlamp beam height adjustment**, refer to the corresponding section.

Certain driving or manoeuvring aids are automatically disabled if an approved towbar is used.

If the exterior temperature is high, it is recommended that the engine is allowed to idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to facilitate its cooling.

Starting/switching off the engine

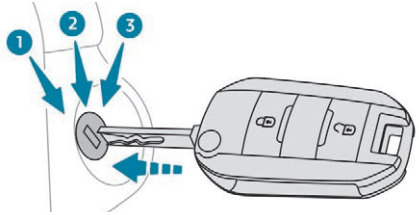
Starting

The parking brake must be applied.

☞ With a manual gearbox, shift the gear lever into neutral, press the clutch pedal to the floor and keep the pedal down until the engine runs.

☞ With an automatic gearbox, select position **P,** then firmly press the brake pedal.

Using the conventional key/the remote control key

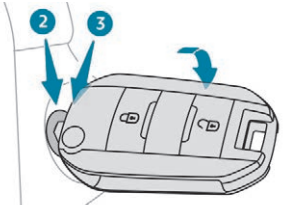


1. **Stop** position.
2. **Ignition on** position.
3. **Starting** position.

☞ Insert the key in the ignition switch. The system recognises the start code.

☞ Unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering and the key.

In certain circumstances, you may have to turn the steering wheel firmly to move the road wheels (if the wheels are against a kerb, for example).



☞ Turn the key to position **2**, ignition on, to operate the engine pre-heating system.

☞ Wait until this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel then operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

The indicator lamp does not come on if the engine is hot. In some climatic conditions, it is advised to follow the recommendations below:

- In temperate conditions, do not leave the engine at idle to warm up but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.

Depending on version, if the air conditioning is activated and when the exterior temperature exceeds 35°C, the idle engine speed can accelerate to reach 1,300 rpm according to the air conditioning requirements.

- In wintry conditions, the pre-heater warning lamp will stay on for a longer period after switching on the ignition; wait until it goes off before starting.
- In **very severe wintry conditions** (temperature below -23°C), to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle (engine and gearbox), **leave the engine running for 4 minutes** before moving off.

Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. Danger of poisoning and death!

With **petrol engines**, after a cold start, preheating the catalytic converter can cause clearly-felt engine vibrations when stationary, with the engine running, for anything up to 2 minutes (accelerated idle speed).

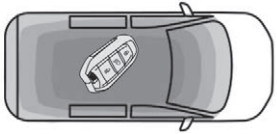
If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition.
Wait a few seconds before restarting the engine. If the engine does not start after several attempts, do not keep trying: you risk damaging the starter motor or the engine.
Call in a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
- never place one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/speed limiter.
The mats approved by PEUGEOT have two fixings located below the seat.

With Keyless Entry and Starting



☞ Place the remote control inside the vehicle, in the recognition zone.

START STOP

☞ Press the "**START/STOP**" button.

With a manual gearbox, the steering column unlocks and the engine starts more or less instantly.
With the EAT8 automatic gearbox, the engine starts more or less instantly.

The warning lamp does not come on if the engine is already warm. In some climatic conditions, it is advised to follow the recommendations below:

- In mild conditions, do not leave the engine at idle to warm up but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.

Depending on version, if the air conditioning is activated and when the exterior temperature exceeds 35°C, the idle engine speed can accelerate up to 1,300 rpm depending on the air conditioning requirements.

- In wintry conditions, the pre-heater warning lamp will stay on for a longer period after switching on the ignition; wait until it goes off before starting.
- In **very severe wintry conditions** (temperature below -23°C), to ensure correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle (engine and gearbox), **leave the engine running for 4 minutes** before moving off.

Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. Danger of poisoning and death!

With **Petrol engines**, after a cold start, pre-heating the catalytic converter can cause clearly-felt engine vibrations when stationary, with the engine running, for anything up to 2 minutes (accelerated idle speed).

For **Diesel vehicles**, in sub-zero temperatures, the engine will not start until the pre-heater warning lamp has gone off.
If this warning lamp comes on after pressing the "START/STOP" button, press down on the brake or clutch pedal until the warning lamp goes off, without pressing the "START/STOP" button again, until the engine starts and runs.

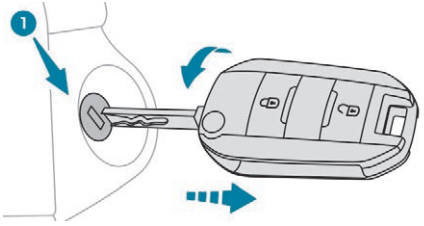
The presence of the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system remote control in the recognition zone is essential.
Never leave the vehicle with the engine running and with the remote control on your person.
If the remote control leaves the recognition zone, a message is displayed. Move the remote control into the zone in order to be able to start the engine.

If one of the starting conditions is not met, a message is displayed in the instrument panel. In some circumstances, it is required to turn the steering wheel slightly while pressing the "START/STOP" button to assist unlocking of the steering column; a message warns you when this is needed.

Switching off

☞ Immobilise the vehicle.

Using the conventional key/the remote control key



☞ Turn the key fully towards you to position **1 (Stop)**.
☞ Remove the key from the ignition switch.
☞ To lock the steering column, turn the steering wheel until it locks.

To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, the front wheels should be straight before switching off the engine.

☞ Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground.

Never switch off the ignition before the vehicle is at a complete stop.

When leaving the vehicle, remove the key and lock the doors.
As a safety measure (children on board), never leave the vehicle without taking your remote control with you, even for a short period.

Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key, which would weigh down on its blade in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction.

Key left in the ignition

When opening the driver's door, an alert message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, to remind you that the key is still in the ignition switch at position **1 (Stop)**.
If the key has been left in the ignition switch at position **2 (Ignition on)**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour.
To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

With Keyless Entry and Starting

☞ With the remote control in the recognition zone, press the "**START/STOP**" button.

With a manual gearbox, the engine switches off and the steering column locks.
With the EAT8 automatic gearbox, the engine switches off.

If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not switch off.

! To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
- never place one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/speed limiter.
The mats approved by PEUGEOT have two fixings located below the seat.

Switching the ignition on with Keyless Entry and Starting

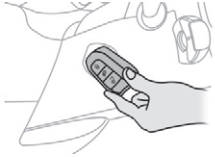
With the Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key inside the vehicle, pressing the "**START/STOP**" button, **without pressing any of the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on.

☞ Press the "**START/STOP**" button, the instrument panel comes on but the engine does not start.
☞ Press this button **again** to switch off the ignition and allow the vehicle to be locked.

i With the ignition on, the system automatically goes into energy economy mode to maintain an adequate state of charge in the battery.

Back-up starting with Keyless Entry and Starting

Should your vehicle not detect the electronic key in the recognition zone, because the remote control battery is flat, a back-up reader is provided to the left, behind the steering wheel, to allow starting.



☞ Place and hold the remote control against the reader, then:
☞ With a manual gearbox, shift the gear lever into neutral, press the clutch pedal to the floor and keep the pedal down until the engine runs.
☞ With an automatic gearbox, select position **P,** then firmly press the brake pedal.
☞ Then, press the "**START/STOP**" button.

The engine starts.

Forced switch-off with Keyless Entry and Starting

In the event of an emergency only and with the vehicle stationary, you can switch off the engine.



☞ To do this, press the "**START/STOP**" button and keep it pressed for about 3 seconds.

In this case the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.

Remote control not recognised with Keyless Entry and Starting

If the remote control is no longer in the recognition zone when you close a door or when you (later) request switching off of the engine, a message appears in the instrument panel.
☞ If you want to force switching off of the engine, press and hold the "**START/STOP**" button for about 3 seconds, then contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic immobiliser

The remote control contains an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

A few seconds after switching off the ignition, this system locks the engine control system, therefore preventing the engine from being started in the event of a break-in.

In the event of a fault, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the screen.

The vehicle will not start; contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

Manual parking brake

Application

☞ With your foot on the brake pedal, pull the parking brake lever up to immobilise your vehicle.

Release on level ground



☞ With your foot on the brake pedal, pull the parking brake lever up gently, press the release button then lower the lever fully.

When the vehicle is being driven, this warning lamp coming on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, indicates that the parking brake is still on or has not been fully released.

! When parking on a slope, or on a steep slope with a laden vehicle, turn the wheels against the kerb then apply the parking brake.

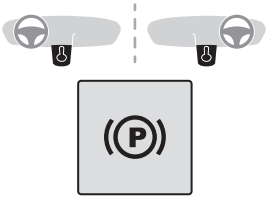
i Pressing the brake pedal facilitates the application and release of the manual parking brake.

! With a manual gearbox, engage a gear then switch off the ignition.

! With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector in position **P** then switch off the ignition.

Automatic electronic parking brake

The system provides, in automatic operation, for the application of the parking brake on switching off the engine and its release as the vehicle moves off.



The driver can take over at any time to apply or release the parking brake, by operating the control lever:

☞ by briefly **pulling** the control lever to apply the brake,

☞ by briefly **pushing** the control lever, while pressing the foot brake, to release it.

Automatic mode is activated by default.

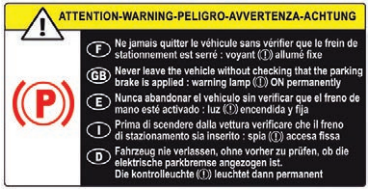
Indicator lamp

This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and in the control lever to confirm the application of the parking brake.

It goes off to confirm the release of the parking brake.

This indicator lamp flashes on the control lever when manual parking brake application or release is performed.

In the event of a battery failure, the automatic electronic parking brake no longer works.
As a safety measure with a manual gearbox, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by engaging a gear.
As a safety measure with an automatic gearbox, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by placing one of the chocks supplied against one of the wheels.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



Before leaving the vehicle, check that the parking brake is applied: the parking brake indicator lamps in the instrument panel and the control lever must be on fixed, not flashing.
If the parking brake is not applied, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed on opening the driver's door.

Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.

When towing, parking on a steep slope, or if your vehicle is heavily laden, turn the wheels towards the kerb and engage a gear with a manual gearbox.
When towing, parking on a steep slope, or if your vehicle is heavily laden, turn the wheels towards the kerb and select mode **P** with an automatic gearbox.
For towing, your vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.

Manual operation

Manual release

With the ignition on or engine running:
- press the brake pedal,
- while maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, briefly push the control lever.

The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

If you push the control lever without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released and a message is displayed.

Manual application

With the vehicle stationary:
- pull briefly on the control lever.

Confirmation of the instruction is signalled by flashing of the indicator lamp in the control lever.
Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

Automatic operation

Automatic release

Ensure first that the engine is running and the driver's door is properly closed.
The automatic electronic parking brake **releases automatically and progressively when the vehicle moves off**.

With a manual gearbox

- Fully depress the clutch pedal, engage 1st gear or reverse.
- Press the accelerator pedal and release the clutch pedal.

With an automatic gearbox

- Press the brake pedal.
- Select position **D**, **M** or **R**.
- Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal.

With an automatic gearbox, if the brake does not release automatically, check that the front doors are correctly closed.

The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

When stationary with the engine running, do not depress the accelerator pedal unnecessarily, you risk releasing the parking brake.

Automatic application

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake **is automatically applied when the engine is switched off**.

Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

Automatic application does not take place if the engine stalls or goes into STOP mode of Stop & Start.

With automatic operation, you can also manually apply or release the parking brake using the control lever.

Special cases

In some situations, you may need to operate the parking brake manually.

Immobilisation of the vehicle with the engine running

To immobilise the vehicle with the engine running, briefly pull the control lever.

Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

Parking the vehicle with the brake released

In very cold conditions (ice), it is recommended that the parking brake not be applied.
To immobilise your vehicle, engage a gear or fit the chocks against one of the wheels.

Immobilisation of the vehicle with the parking brake released.

- Switch off the engine.

Illumination of the warning lamps in the instrument panel and control lever confirm the application of the parking brake.

- Switch on the ignition again, without starting the engine.
- Release the parking brake manually by pushing the control lever while keeping your foot on the brake pedal.

The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

- Switch off the ignition.

With an automatic gearbox, mode **P** is automatically selected when the ignition is switched off. The wheels are blocked.
For further information on the **Automatic gearbox**, particularly in relation to leaving the vehicle in free-wheeling mode, refer to the corresponding section.

With an automatic gearbox, when mode **N** is engaged, the opening of the driver's door will cause an audible signal to sound. It will stop when you close the driver's door again.

Deactivating automatic operation

In some situations, for example when it is extremely cold or during towing (caravan, recovery), it may be necessary to deactivate automatic operation of the system.

- ☞ Start the engine.
- ☞ Apply the parking brake with the control lever, if it is released.
- ☞ Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.
- ☞ Push and hold the control lever in the release direction for at least 10 seconds and no more than 15 seconds.
- ☞ Release the control lever.
- ☞ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ☞ Pull the control lever in the application direction for 2 seconds.



Deactivation of the automatic functions is confirmed by illumination of this indicator lamp in the instrument panel.

- ☞ Release the control lever and the brake pedal.

From now on, the parking brake can only be applied and released manually using the control lever.

Repeat this procedure to reactivate automatic operation.
Reactivation of automatic operation is confirmed by the indicator lamp in the instrument panel going off.

Emergency braking

! The emergency braking should only be used in an exceptional situation.

In the event of a failure of the main service brake or in an exceptional situation (e.g. driver taken ill, under instruction, etc.), a continuous pull on the control lever will brake the vehicle. Braking takes place while the control lever is being pulled. It is interrupted if the control lever is released.
The ABS and DSC systems provide stability of the vehicle during emergency braking.
If the emergency braking malfunctions, the message "Parking brake control faulty" will be displayed in the instrument panel.



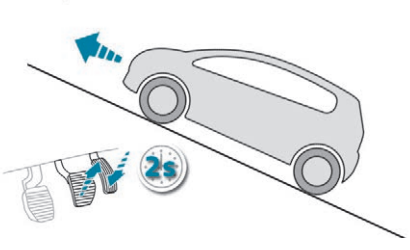
If the ABS and DSC systems malfunction, signalled by the illumination of one or both warning lamps in the instrument panel, then stability of the vehicle is no longer guaranteed. In this event, stability must be assured by the driver by repeating alternate "pull-release" actions on the control lever until the vehicle is immobilised.

Hill start assist

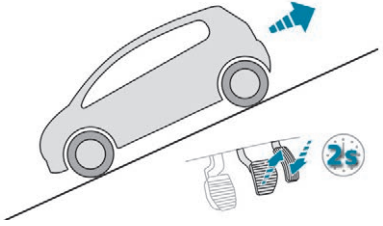
System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.
It is only active when:
- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,

- certain slope conditions are met,
- the driver's door is closed.

! Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held temporarily by hill start assist.
If you need to leave the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually then ensure that the parking brake warning lamp lights up fixed on the instrument panel.



Uphill, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal.
With a **manual gearbox**, if you are in first gear or in neutral.
With an **automatic gearbox**, if you are in position **D** or **M**.



Downhill, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal.

Malfunction



If a fault in the system occurs, these warning lamps come on.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

5-speed manual gearbox

Engaging reverse gear



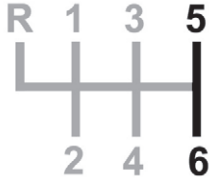
☞ With the clutch pedal fully down, you must place the gear lever in neutral.
☞ Move the gear lever to the right, then pull it back.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:
- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

6-speed manual gearbox

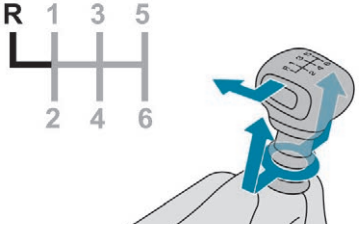
Engaging 5th or 6th gear



☞ Move the gear lever fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

! Failure to follow this instruction could cause permanent damage to the gearbox (inadvertent engagement of 3rd or 4th gear).

Engaging reverse gear



☞ Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear lever to the left then forwards.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting the engine:
- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

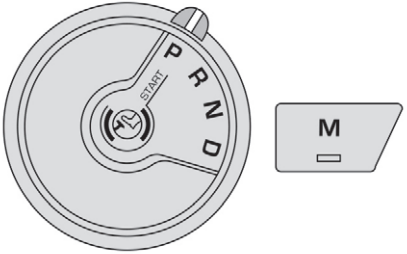
Automatic gearbox

8-speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of automatic operation or manual gear changing.
There are two driving modes:
- **automatic** operation for electronic management of the gears by the gearbox,
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

In automatic mode, you can still change gear manually using the steering mounted control paddles, when overtaking for example.

Gear selector

! To safely operate the gear selector, it is recommended that you keep your foot on the brake.



P. Park.
- ☞ With your foot on the brake, turn the selector to this position for parking or starting.

R. Reverse.
- ☞ Turn the selector to this position.

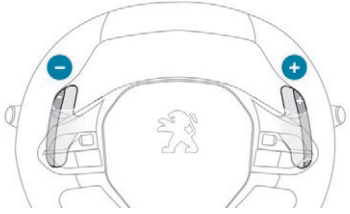
N. Neutral.
- ☞ Turn the selector to this position for starting.

D. Automatic operation.
- ☞ Turn the selector to this position.

M. Manual operation with sequential changing of the gears.
- ☞ Selector in position **D**, press this button then use the steering mounted controls to change gear.

Position **N** can be used in traffic jams or in a washing tunnel.

Steering mounted controls



☞ Pull the right-hand "**+**" or left-hand "**-**" control paddle towards you to change up or down.

The steering mounted controls do not allow neutral to be selected and reverse gear to be engaged or disengaged.

Displays in the instrument panel





When you move the gear selector or press button **M**, the corresponding symbol appears in the instrument panel.

P. Park
R. Reverse
N. Neutral
D. Drive (automatic operation)
M. Manual (manual operation)
1 to 8. Gear engaged
- Invalid value



☞ If the message "**Foot on the brake**" is displayed in the instrument panel, press the brake pedal firmly.

Starting the vehicle



☞ With your foot on the brake, select position **P**.

☞ Start the engine.

If the conditions are not met, there is an audible signal, accompanied by a message on the instrument panel screen.

☞ Release the parking brake.

☞ Select position **R**, **N** or **D**.

If you have to move off on a steep slope with a loaded vehicle, **press the brake pedal**, select position **D**, release the parking brake, then release the brake pedal.

☞ Progressively release the brake pedal.

The vehicle moves off immediately.

If **P** is displayed on the instrument panel but the selector is in another position, place the selector in position **P** to allow the engine to be started.
If position **N** is selected inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle, then select position **D** to accelerate.

If position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected when the engine is running at idle, with the brakes released, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed.
Never leave children in the vehicle unsupervised.
As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle without taking your key or remote control with you, even for a short time.
When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, do not try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Automatic operation

D

☞ Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the six gears.

The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the style of driving, the profile of the road and the load in the vehicle.



For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, press the accelerator fully (kick-down). The gearbox changes down automatically or holds the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.

When braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide effective engine braking.
For better safety, the gearbox will not shift up if you release the accelerator sharply.

! Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.
Never select position **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

Temporary manual control of gear changes

You can temporarily take over control of gear changes using the "**+**" and "**-**" steering mounted controls. If the engine speed allows, the gear change is carried out.
This function allows you to anticipate certain situations, such as overtaking another vehicle or approaching a bend in the road.
After a few moments with no action on the control paddles, the gearbox returns to automatic operation.

Self-sufficient traction (moving without using the accelerator)

This function facilitates manoeuvring of the vehicle at low speed (when parking, in traffic jams, etc.).
With the engine at idle, parking brake released and position **D**, **M** or **R** selected, the **vehicle moves** as soon as you take your foot off the brake pedal (even without pressing the accelerator).

! As a safety measure (children on board), never leave the vehicle with the engine running and the doors closed.

Manual operation



☞ With the selector in position **D**, press button **M** for **sequential** changing of the six gears.

The indicator lamp for the button comes on.
☞ Operate the "**+**" or "**-**" steering mounted controls.



M appears and the gears engaged appear in succession in the instrument panel.



☞ It is possible to return to automatic operation at any time by pressing button **M** again.

The indicator lamp for the button goes off.

i In manual mode, it is not necessary to release the accelerator pedal when changing gear.

i It is only possible to change from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed permit.

If the engine speed is too low or too high, the selected gear flashes for a few seconds, then the actual activated gear is displayed.
When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox selects gear **M1** automatically.

To save the brakes when descending a steep incline, use engine braking to reduce your speed (change down to a lower gear).
Keeping the brake pedal pressed continuously for long periods can overheat the brakes, with the risk of damaging the braking system or making it inoperative.
Only use the brakes when necessary, to slow or stop the vehicle.

Depending on the road configuration (e.g. mountainous road), manual operation is preferable.
This is because automatic operation may not be best suited, not allowing the use of engine braking.

Invalid value during manual operation



This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (gear selector between two positions).

☞ Place the selector "correctly" at a position.

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, select position **P** then apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle.

A point of resistance may be noticed when moving to position **P**.
If the selector is not in position **P**, when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, an audible signal sounds and a message appears.
☞ Return the selector to position **P**; the audible signal stops and the message disappears.

On a steep slope with a loaded vehicle, **press the brake pedal**, select position **P**, apply the parking brake then release the brake pedal.

In all circumstances, ensure that the selector is in position **P** before leaving your vehicle.

Malfunction

When the ignition is on, a message appears in the instrument panel screen to indicate a gearbox fault.
In this case, the gearbox switches to back-up mode and is locked in 3rd gear. You may feel a substantial knock when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R.** This will not cause any damage to the gearbox.
Do not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

There is a risk of damage to the gearbox:
- if you press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time (braking or acceleration must be done only with the right foot),
- if you force the selector from position **P** to another position when the battery is flat.

To reduce fuel consumption when stationary for long periods with the engine running (traffic jam, etc.), position the selector on **N** and apply the parking brake.

Gear efficiency indicator

(Depending on engine.)

This system reduces fuel consumption by recommending the most appropriate gear.

Operation

Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one or more gears. You can follow this indication without engaging the intermediate gears.
Gear shift recommendations must not be considered as compulsory. In fact, the road layout, the traffic density and safety remain the deciding factors when choosing the best gear.
The driver therefore remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the indications issued by the system.
This function cannot be deactivated.

With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual operation.



The information appears in the instrument panel, in the form of an ascending or descending arrow and the recommended gear.

The system adapts its gear shift recommendation according to the driving conditions (slope, load, etc.) and the driver's requirements (power, acceleration, braking, etc.).
The system never suggests:
- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse.

Stop & Start

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily into standby – STOP mode – during stops in traffic (red lights, traffic jams, etc.). The engine restarts automatically – START mode – as soon as you want to move off.
The restart takes place instantly, quickly and silently.
Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

Going into engine STOP mode

For your convenience during parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear.
The Stop & Start does not affect the functionality of the vehicle, such as for example, braking, power steering, etc.
A slight delay between the vehicle stopping and the engine cutting out may be noticed.

Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition.



When the vehicle speed is below 2 mph (3 km/h) or the vehicle is stationary (depending on engine), this indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby automatically:

- **With a manual gearbox**, when you put the gearbox into neutral and release the clutch pedal.
- **With an automatic gearbox**, when you press the brake pedal or put the gear selector in position **N**.

Stop & Start time counter



(minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)

If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.
It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Special cases: STOP mode not available

STOP mode is not activated in certain temporary conditions (examples: battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature) to assure correct operation of the system and mainly when:

- the vehicle is on a steep slope (rising or falling),
- the driver's door is open,
- a sliding side door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start by the driver,
- the automatic electronic parking brake is applied or being applied,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is active,
- the ambient temperature is lower than about 0°C or higher than about 35°C.



In this case, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Going into engine START mode



With a **manual gearbox**, the Stop & Start warning lamp goes off on the instrument panel and the engine restarts automatically when you press the clutch pedal **fully** down to the floor.

With an **automatic gearbox**, the Stop & Start warning lamp on the instrument panel goes off and the engine restarts automatically when:

- you release the brake pedal with the gear selector in position **D** or **M**,
- you are in position **N** with the brake pedal released and you move the gear selector to position **D** or **M**,
- you engage reverse.

Special cases: START mode triggered automatically

START mode is activated automatically in certain temporary conditions (examples: battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, air conditioning setting) to assure correct operation of the system and mainly when:

- you open the driver's door,
- you open a sliding side door,
- you unfasten the driver's seat belt,
- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 2 mph (3 km/h) (depending on the engine)

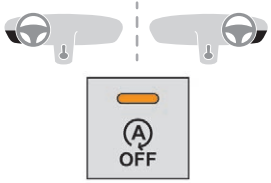


In this case, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Deactivation/Activation

With button



☞ To deactivate or reactivate the system, press this button.

The indicator lamp **is lit** when the system is **deactivated**.

With audio system/touch screen



Activation or deactivation is done via the vehicle configuration menu.

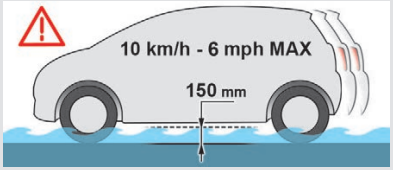
! If the system has been deactivated in STOP mode, the engine restarts immediately.

i The system reactivates automatically every time the engine is started by the driver.

! **Opening the bonnet**

Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid the risk of injury related to an automatic change to START mode.

! **Driving on flooded roads**



Before driving through a flooded road, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.

For more information on **Driving recommendations**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

Malfunction

Depending on your vehicle's equipment:

In the event of a fault with the system, this warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel.



The warning lamp in this button flashes and a message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

If a fault occurs in STOP mode, the vehicle may stall.

All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on.

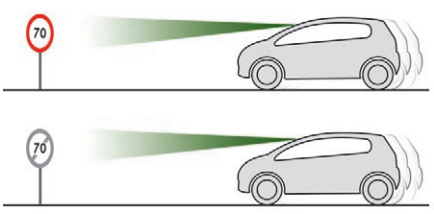
Depending on version, a warning message may also be displayed, asking you to place the gear selector in position **N** and to press the brake pedal.

With the vehicle stationary, you must switch off the ignition and then start the engine again.

Speed Limit recognition and recommendation

! This function is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the driver's own vigilance nor compliance with the highway code.
The actual signs always take priority over those suggested by the system.
The signs must comply with the Vienna Convention on road signs.

This system displays the maximum authorised speed in the instrument panel, according to the speed limits in the country in which you are driving, using:



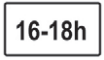
- Speed limit signs detected by the camera.
- Speed limit details from the navigation system mapping.

! It is necessary to update your navigation mapping regularly in order to receive accurate information on speed limits from the system.

- Certain road signs detected by the camera (e.g. entering a built-up area).

Sign detected	Suggested speed (calculated)
Entry into built-up area Example:  	**Without PEUGEOT Connect Nav** 30 mph or 50 km/h (depending on the units of the instrument panel) **With PEUGEOT Connect Nav** Display of the speed in force in the country in which you are driving.
Entry into intersection zone Example:  	**Without PEUGEOT Connect Nav** 10 mph or 20 km/h (depending on the units of the instrument panel) **With PEUGEOT Connect Nav** Display of the speed in force in the country in which you are driving.

- Certain road sign qualifier plates detected by the camera (e.g. the speed limit if towing).

Qualifier plate detected	Displaying the speed associated with the qualifier plate
Speed limit in rain Examples: 	If the wiper control stalk is in the "intermittent wiping" or "automatic wiping" position (so that the rain sensor is activated): 68 mph (110 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit if towing 	If an approved towing device is fixed to the vehicle: 56 mph (90 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit applicable over a certain distance Example: 	43 mph (70 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit for vehicles whose gross vehicle weight or gross train weight is less than 3.5 tonnes 	56 mph (90 km/h) (for example)
Speed limit in snow Example: 	If the exterior temperature is below 3°C: 19 mph (30 km/h) (for example) with a "snowflake" symbol
Speed limit at certain times Example: 	19 mph (30 km/h) (for example) with a "clock" symbol

! The units for the speed limits (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in.
It should be taken into account so that you observe the speed limit.
For the system to operate correctly when you change country, the units for speed in the instrument panel must be those for the country you are driving in.

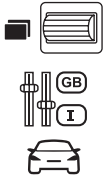
! The automatic reading of road signs is a driving aid system and does not always display speed limits correctly.
The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority over the display by the system.
The system cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
The driver must observe the driving regulations and must adapt the speed of the vehicle to suit the weather and traffic conditions.
It is possible for the system to not display the speed limit if it does not detect a speed limit sign within a preset period.
The system is designed to detect signs that conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

To maintain correct operation of the system: regularly clean the area in front of the camera.
The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.

Specific speed limits, such as those for heavy goods vehicles, are not displayed.
The display of the speed limit in the instrument panel is updated as you pass a speed limit sign intended for cars (light vehicles).

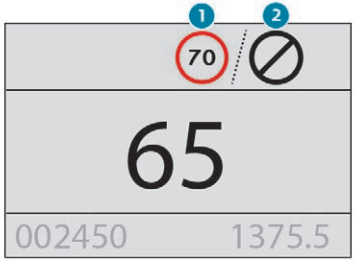
Activation/Deactivation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.



Activation and deactivation is done via the vehicle configuration menu.

Displays in the instrument panel



1. Detected speed limit indication.
or

2. Indication of the end of the speed limit.



The system is active but is not detecting speed limit information.



On detection of speed limit information, the system displays the value.



For a suggested maximum speed, the first time that the vehicle's speed exceeds it by **more than 3 mph (5 km/h)** (example: 59 mph (95 km/h)), the speed flashes for 10 seconds.

Operating limits

The legislation on speed limits is specific to each country.
The system does not take account of reduced speed limits in the following cases:
- atmospheric pollution,
- when towing,
- driving with a space-saver type spare wheel or snow chains fitted,
- puncture repair using the temporary repair kit,
- young drivers, etc.

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:
- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, rain, fog),
- windscreen area located in front of the camera: dirty, misted, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
- fault with the camera,

- obsolete or incorrect mapping,
- hidden road signs (other vehicles, vegetation, snow),
- speed limit signs that do not conform to the standard, are damaged or distorted.

If an app on your smart phone is used via Mirror Screen, the sign displayed by the system may be temporarily hidden. It will be redisplayed as soon as you pass another sign.

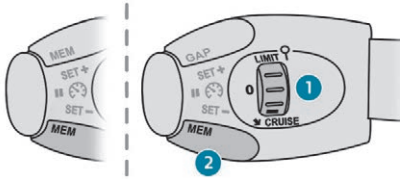
Recommendation



In addition to **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, the driver can keep the speed displayed as a speed setting for the speed limiter or cruise control using the speed limiter or cruise control stalk storage button.

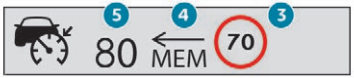
For more information on the **Speed limiter**, **Cruise control** or **Adaptive cruise control**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Steering mounted controls



1. Select speed limiter/cruise control mode.
2. Memorise a speed setting.

Display in the instrument panel



3. Speed limit indication.
4. Offer to memorise the speed.
5. Current speed setting.

Memorising the speed



☞ Switch on the speed limiter/cruise control.
Speed limiter/cruise control information is displayed.

On detection of a sign offering a new speed limit, the system displays the value and **MEM** flashes for a few seconds to offer to make it a new speed setting.

If there is a difference of less than 6 mph (10 km/h) between the speed setting and the speed displayed by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation, the **MEM** symbol is not displayed.

Depending on the road conditions, several speeds may be displayed.

☞ Make an **initial** press on button **2** to request saving of the speed suggested.
A message is displayed to confirm the request.

☞ Press button **2 again** to confirm and save the new speed setting.
After a predetermined period, the screen returns to the current display.

Extended Traffic Sign Recognition



Using the camera installed at the top of the windscreen, this additional system recognises these road signs and displays them in the instrument panel.
One-way street: if you start driving down a one-way street the wrong way, an alert message, including the sign's symbol, is displayed in the instrument panel (request to check the traffic direction).
Other signs: when approaching one of these signs, the sign's symbol is displayed in the instrument panel.

! This function is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the driver's own vigilance nor compliance with the highway code.
The actual signs always take priority over the display by the system.
The signs must comply with the Vienna Convention on road signs.

Speed limiter

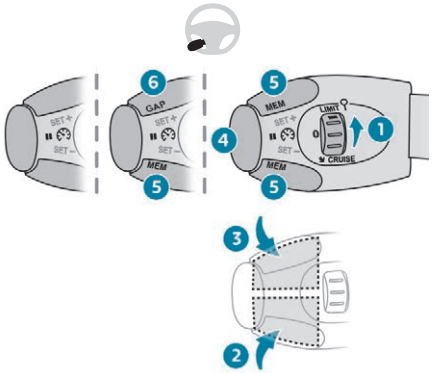
This system prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.

The speed limiter is **switched on** manually.
The minimum programmed speed is 19 mph (30 km/h).

The programmed speed value remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

! The speed limiter is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits or the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

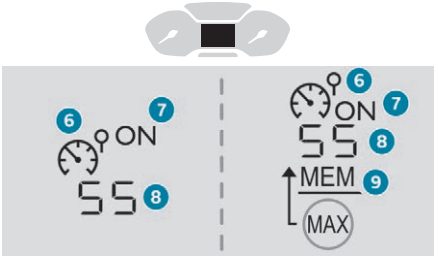
Steering mounted control



1. Select speed limiter mode.
2. Decrease the programmed value.
3. Increase the programmed value.
4. Speed limiter on/pause.
5. Depending on version:
   Display of memorised speed thresholds with the programmable speed limiter
   or
   Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation.
6. Display and adjustment of the programmed inter-vehicle distance.

For more information on the **Programmable** or **Adaptive cruise control**, on **Memorising speeds** or on the **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Displays in the instrument panel



6. Speed limiter mode selection indication.
7. Speed limiter on/pause indication.

8. Programmed speed setting value.
9. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation.

Switching on/pausing

☞ Turn thumbwheel **1** to the "**LIMIT**" position to select the speed limiter; the function is paused.



☞ If the speed setting is suitable (last speed setting programmed in the system), press button **4** to switch the speed limiter on.



☞ Pressing button **4** again temporarily interrupts the function (pause).

Adjusting the limit speed setting

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.

To modify the limit speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle:

☞ in steps of +/- 1 mph (km/h), make successive short presses on button **2** or **3**,

☞ continuously, in steps of +/- 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

To modify the limit speed setting using memorised speeds and from the touch screen:

☞ press button **5** to display the memorised speed settings,

☞ press the button for the desired speed setting.

The selection screen closes after a few moments.
This setting becomes the new limit speed.

To modify the limit speed setting from the speed suggested by the vehicle Speed Limit recognition and recommendation:

☞ the speed suggested is displayed in the instrument panel,

☞ make a first press on button **5**; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request,

☞ press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed displays immediately in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

☞ If you want to temporarily exceed the programmed limit speed, press **firmly** on the accelerator pedal, going beyond the **point of resistance**.



The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the displayed programmed speed flashes.
If it is exceeded for a prolonged period of time, an audible warning is triggered.
Simply release the accelerator pedal to return to below the programmed speed.

When the limit speed is exceeded but this is not due to action by the driver (in case of a steep slope, for example), an audible signal triggers immediately.

! On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.
You may have to brake to control the speed of your vehicle.



Once the speed of the vehicle returns to the programmed setting, the speed limiter functions again: the display of the programmed speed setting becomes fixed again.

Switching off

☞ Turn thumbwheel **1** to position "**0**". The display of information related to the speed limiter disappears.

Malfunction



Flashing dashes indicate a fault with the speed limiter.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter.
To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

Programmable cruise control



System which automatically maintains the cruising speed of the vehicle at a setting programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control is **switched on** manually.
It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h).
With a manual gearbox, it requires the engagement of third gear or higher.
With an automatic gearbox, it requires the engagement of the selector in mode **D** or of second gear or higher in mode **M**.

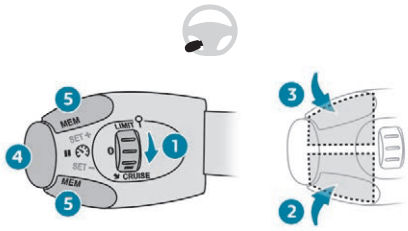
i The cruise control remains active after changing gear, regardless of the gearbox type, on vehicles fitted with Stop & Start.

The operation of the cruise control can be temporarily interrupted (pause):
- by pressing control **4** or by pressing the brake pedal,
- automatically, if operation of the dynamic stability control system is triggered.

i Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed setting.

! The cruise control system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. As a safety measure, you are advised to keep your feet near the pedals at all times.

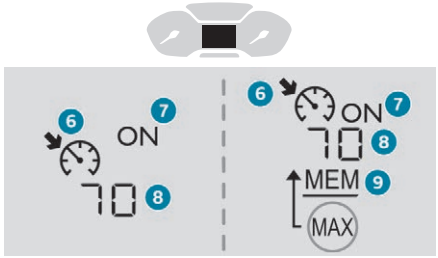
Steering mounted control



1. Select cruise control mode.
2. Use the current speed as the speed setting/decrease the speed setting.
3. Use the current speed as the speed setting/increase the speed setting.
4. Pause/Resume cruise control.
5. Depending on version:
   Display of speed thresholds in the memory with the programmable cruise control
   or
   Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation.

For more information on **Memorising speeds** or on the **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Displays in the instrument panel



6. Cruise control mode selection indication.
7. Cruise control pause/resume indication.
8. Programmed speed setting value.
9. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation.

Switching on/pausing



☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "**CRUISE**" position to select cruise control mode; the function is paused.



☞ To start the cruise control and set a cruise speed, once the vehicle has reached the desired speed, press button **2** or **3**; the current speed of your vehicle becomes the cruise speed setting.

You can release the accelerator pedal.



☞ Pressing button **4** temporarily interrupts operation of the system (pause).

☞ Pressing button **4** again restores operation of the cruise control (ON).

Modifying the cruise speed setting

The cruise control must be active.

To modify the cruise speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle:

☞ in steps of +/- 1 mph (km/h), make successive short presses on button **2** or **3**,

☞ continuously, in steps of +/- 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

! Take care: pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

! As a precaution, it is recommended that the cruise speed chosen be close to the current speed of your vehicle, so as to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

To modify the cruise speed setting using memorised speed settings and from the touch screen:

- ☞ press button **5** to display the memorised speed settings,
- ☞ press the button for the desired speed setting.

The selection screen closes after a few moments.
This setting becomes the new cruise speed.

To modify the cruise speed setting using the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation system:

- ☞ the speed suggested is displayed in the instrument panel,
- ☞ make a first press on button **5**; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request,
- ☞ press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed displays immediately in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

If needed (for overtaking, etc.) it is possible to exceed the programmed speed by pressing the accelerator pedal.



The cruise control is temporarily overridden and the programmed speed setting flashes.
To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal.



Once the vehicle has returned to the programmed speed, the cruise control takes over again: the display of the programmed speed setting becomes steady again.

! When descending a steep hill, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed. You may have to brake to control the speed of your vehicle. In this case, the cruise control is automatically paused. To activate the system again, with the speed of the vehicle above 25 mph (40 km/h), press button **4**.

Switching off

- ☞ Turn wheel **1** to position "**0**". The display of information related to the cruise control disappears.

Malfunction



Flashing dashes indicate a fault with the cruise control system.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Use the cruise control only where the driving conditions allow running at a constant speed and at an adequate safe distance for a period of time.
Do not activate the cruise control in urban areas, in heavy traffic, on winding or steep roads, on slippery or flooded roads, or in conditions of poor visibility (heavy rain, fog, falling snow, etc.).
In some circumstances, it may not be possible to maintain or even reach the cruise speed set: towing, vehicle heavily loaded, steep climb.

! The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with the operation of the cruise control.
To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

Dynamic cruise control



This system provides the following functions:
- Automatically maintains the vehicle at the speed set by the driver.
- Automatic adjustment of the distance between your vehicle and the one in front.

With an automatic gearbox, automatic adjustment of the distance can cause your vehicle to come to a complete stop.

i Speed regulation remains active after changing gear regardless of the gearbox type.

It manages the acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle by automatically acting on the engine and the braking system.



For this purpose there is a camera located at the top of the windscreen.

! Primarily designed for driving on main roads and motorways, this system only works on **moving vehicles**, driving in the **same direction** as your vehicle.

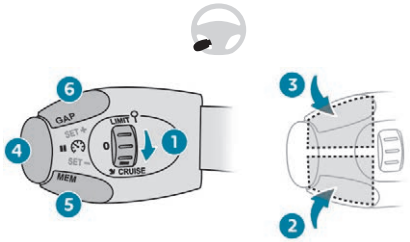
Principle of operation

The system automatically adapts the speed of your vehicle to that of the vehicle in front, to maintain a constant distance.
If the vehicle in front is driving more slowly, the system slows, or even stops your vehicle, using engine braking and the braking system (for versions fitted with an automatic gearbox).
If the vehicle in front accelerates or changes lane, the cruise control progressively accelerates your vehicle to return to the programmed speed.
If the driver operates a direction indicator to overtake a slower vehicle, the cruise control allows your vehicle to temporarily approach the vehicle in front to assist the overtaking manoeuvre, though never exceeding the programmed speed.

The brake lamps illuminate as soon as the braking system is activated with deceleration of the vehicle.

This system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits and safety distances, nor the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
Some vehicles present on the road may not be properly seen or may be poorly interpreted by the camera (e.g. a lorry), which may lead to a poor assessment of the distances and lead to the vehicle inappropriately accelerating or braking.
The driver must be ready at all times to retake control of their vehicle by keeping both hands on the steering wheel and keeping the feet near the brake and accelerator pedals.

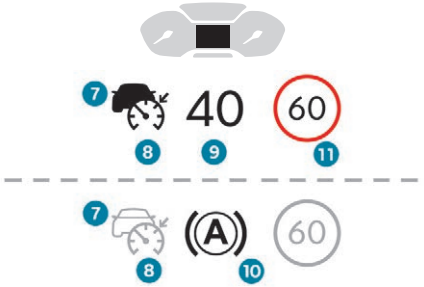
Steering mounted control



1. Select cruise control mode.
2. Use the current speed as the speed setting/decrease the speed setting.
3. Use the current speed as the speed setting/increase the speed setting.
4. Pause/Resume cruise control.
5. Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation.
6. Display and adjustment of the programmed inter-vehicle distance.

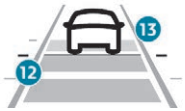
For more information on the **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, refer to the corresponding section.

Displays in the instrument panel



7. Indication of the presence/absence of a target vehicle.
8. Indication of cruise control activation/ deactivation.
9. Value of the speed setting.
10. Indication that vehicle is held stationary (versions fitted with the automatic gearbox).
11. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation.

If a vehicle is detected, the symbol **7** is filled with the colour associated with the cruise control mode. By default, the symbol **7** is empty.
When the cruise control is in operation, the symbols **7** and **8** are displayed in green. By default, they are displayed in grey.



12. Inter-vehicle distance setting.

13. Position of vehicle detected by the camera.

Switching on

☞ With the engine running, turn the wheel **1** to the "**CRUISE**" position. The system is paused (grey display).

With a manual gearbox

With the speed of the vehicle between 20 and 100 mph (30 and 160 km/h):

☞ With the vehicle moving, press one of the buttons **2** or **3**: the current speed of your vehicle becomes the cruise speed setting.

The cruise control starts operating (displayed in green).

With an automatic gearbox

The **D** or **M** mode must be selected.

With the speed of the vehicle between 1 and 112 mph (30 km/h and 180 km/h):

☞ Accelerate slightly and press one of the buttons **2** or **3**: the system starts (green display).

The cruise speed setting then becomes equal to:

- the current speed of your vehicle, if it is over 19 mph (30 km/h),
- 19 mph (30 km/h), if it is below 19 mph (30 km/h).

Remembering the settings

Switching off the ignition cancels any speed setting value chosen by the driver.

By default, the inter-vehicle distance is set at "**Normal**" (2 dashes). Otherwise, the last setting made will be used when switching on the system.

Pause

The cruise control can be **paused** manually:

- either by action by the driver:
  - On the button **4** (Pause).
  - On the brake pedal.
  - On the automatic electronic parking brake control.
  - On the clutch pedal, by pressing for approximately 10 seconds or more.
  - When changing from **D** to **N** with an automatic gearbox.
- or automatically:
  - If the ESC system is activated, for safety reasons.
  - When the speed of the vehicle goes below 19 mph (30 km/h) (1,100 rpm) with a manual gearbox.

! When the cruise control is paused, it can only be reactivated when all of the safety conditions are met again. The message "Activation not possible, conditions unsuitable" is displayed while reactivation is not possible.

Reactivating the function

With manual gearbox

To reactivate the function, the driver must accelerate to reach at least 19 mph (30 km/h), then press one of the buttons **2**, **3** or **4**.

With automatic gearbox

Following braking of the vehicle bringing it to a complete stop, the system holds the vehicle stationary; the cruise control is paused.

The driver should press the accelerator pedal to move off, then reactivate the system above 19 mph (30 km/h) by pressing one of the buttons **2**, **3** or **4**.

If the driver takes no action following this immobilisation, the automatic electronic parking brake is applied automatically after a while (approximately 5 minutes).

! As a safety measure, wait until the current speed approaches the speed setting to reactivate the function by pressing button **4**.

Modification of the speed setting

With the engine running and cruise control on (green), you can modify the speed setting.

From the current speed

☞ By successive short presses on button **2** or **3**, to lower or raise the setting in steps of + or -1 mph (km/h).

☞ By a maintained press on button **2** or **3**, to lower or raise the setting in steps of + or -5 mph (km/h).

! Take care: pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

From the speed limit sign recognition system

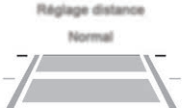
☞ The suggested speed is displayed in the instrument panel.
☞ Make an initial press on button **5**; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request.
☞ Press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed displays immediately in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

For more information on the **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, refer to the corresponding section.

! As a precaution, it is recommended that you select a cruise speed close to the current speed of your vehicle, so as to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

Modification of the programmed inter-vehicle distance



Three threshold settings are suggested for the inter-vehicle distance:
- "**Distant**" (3 dashes),
- "**Normal**" (2 dashes),
- "**Close**" (1 dash).

Engine running and with the wheel at the "**CRUISE**" position:
☞ press button **6** to display the selection screen for inter-vehicle distance.
☞ By pressing button **6** repeatedly, cycle through the predefined settings.

The selection screen closes after a few seconds.
The change then takes effect.

This setting remains in memory, whatever the state of the system and when the ignition is switched off.

i The selection also applies to the stopping distance (versions with automatic gearbox EAT8).

Exceeding the programmed setting

It is possible to exceed the speed setting temporarily by depressing the accelerator pedal.
The cruise control no longer manages the braking system during this period.
Simply release the accelerator pedal to return to the programmed speed.

If the programmed speed setting is exceeded, the display of the speed setting disappears and a message "Cruise control suspended" is displayed until the accelerator pedal is released.

Driving situations and associated alerts

The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed depending on the driving situations.
The display of these alerts is not sequential.

Indicator lamp	Display	Associated message	Comments
(grey)		"Cruise control paused"	System paused. No vehicle detected.
(grey)		"Cruise control paused"	System paused. A vehicle has been detected.
70 (green)	 according to the inter-vehicle distance selected	"Cruise control on"	System activated. No vehicle detected.
70 (green)	 according to the inter-vehicle distance selected	"Cruise control on"	System activated. A vehicle has been detected.
or (green)		"Cruise control suspended"	System activated. The driver has temporarily taken control of the vehicle by accelerating.

Indicator lamp	Display	Associated message	Comments
70 (green)	+ (orange)	"Take back control of the vehicle"	The driver must take back control of the vehicle by accelerating or braking, depending on the circumstances.
70 (green)	+ (red)	"Take back control of the vehicle"	The system cannot manage the critical situation alone (emergency braking of the target vehicle, rapid insertion of another vehicle between the two vehicles). **The driver must immediately take back control of the vehicle.**
(70) or (70) (grey)		"Activation not possible, conditions unsuitable"	The system refuses to activate the cruise control. For more information, refer to **Operating Limits**.

With automatic gearbox

Indicator lamp	Display	Associated message	Comments
(A) or (A) (grey)/(green)	according to the inter-vehicle distance selected and the actual distance from the target vehicle	"Cruise control paused" (for a few seconds)	The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop and is holding it immobilised. The driver must accelerate to move off again. The cruise control remains paused until the driver reactivates it.

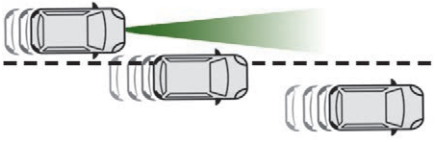
Following braking of the vehicle bringing it to a complete stop, the system holds the vehicle stationary; the cruise control is paused.
The driver should press the accelerator pedal to move off, then reactivate the system by pressing one of the buttons **2**, **3** or **4**.
If the driver takes no action following this immobilisation, the automatic electronic parking brake is applied automatically after a while (approximately 5 minutes).

Operating limits

The system cannot exceed the limits of the laws of physics.
Certain situations cannot be managed by the system and require the driver to take back control of the vehicle.

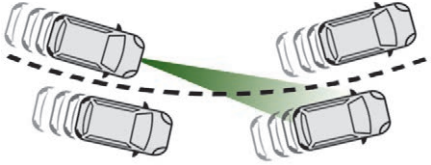
Cases of non-detection by the camera:

- Pedestrians, some cyclists, animals.
- Stationary vehicles (traffic jam, breakdown, etc.).

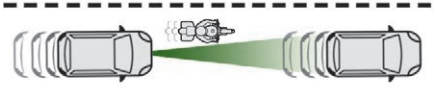


- Vehicles crossing your lane.
- Vehicles driving in the opposite direction.

When the driver must suspend the cruise control system:



- Vehicles in a tight bend.
- When approaching a roundabout.

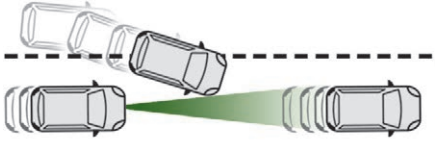


- When following a narrow vehicle.

Reactivate cruise control when conditions permit.

Cases where the driver is urged to take back control immediately:

- Excessively sharp deceleration of the vehicle in front of you.



- When a vehicle cuts in sharply between your vehicle and the one in front.

The system must not be activated in the following situations:

- Use of the "space-saver" type spare wheel (depending on version).
- Towing.
- Carrying long objects on roof bars or roof rack.
- Following an impact on the windscreen close to the camera.
- Unfavourable climatic conditions.

! Be particularly careful:
- When motorcycles are present and when there are vehicles staggered onto the traffic lane.
- When you enter a tunnel or cross a bridge.

! The cruise control operates by day and night, in fog or moderate rainfall.
However, it is strongly recommended that you always keep a safe distance from vehicles ahead, according to the driving conditions, the weather and the road surface.
Use the cruise control only where the driving conditions allow running at a constant speed and keeping an adequate safety distance.
Do not activate the cruise control in urban areas where pedestrians are likely to cross the road, in heavy traffic (except for versions with EAT8 gearbox), on winding or steep roads, on slippery or flooded roads, when there is snowfall, if the windscreen is damaged or when the brake lamps have failed.
In certain circumstances, it may not be possible for the speed setting to be maintained or even attained: loaded vehicle, ascending a steep hill, etc.

! The system is not intended for the following situations:
- if the front end of the vehicle has been modified (addition of long-range headlamps, painting of the front bumper),
- driving on a racing circuit,
- running on a rolling road,
- use of snow chains, non-slip covers or studded tyres.

The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with the operation of the cruise control.
To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
- ensure that the mat is secured correctly,
- do not place one mat on top of another.

! The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:
- driving on a winding road,
- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, etc.),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light, etc.),
- camera obstructed (mud, frost, snow, condensation, etc.).

In these situations, detection performance may be reduced.

Malfunction



If the cruise control malfunctions, dashes are displayed instead of the cruise control speed setting.



If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message and an audible signal, this confirms a malfunction.

Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i The adaptive cruise control deactivates automatically if the use of a "space-saver" type spare wheel is detected or if there is a malfunction on the lateral brake lamps or trailer brake lamps (for approved trailers).

Memorising speeds

Linked to the speed limiter and programmable cruise control, this function allows speed limits to be registered which will then be suggested as settings for these two systems.
You can memorise several speed settings for each system.

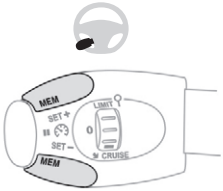
By default, some speed settings are already memorised.

! As a safety measure, the driver must only modify the speed settings when stationary.

Changing a speed setting

From the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen, select "**Driving functions**" then "**Memorised speed settings**".

"MEM" button



With this button, you can select a memorised speed setting to use with the speed limiter or the programmable cruise control.

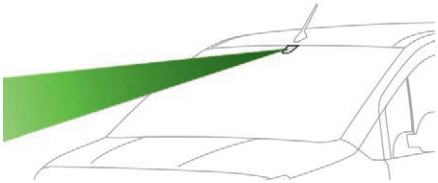
For more information on the **Speed limiter** or **Programmable cruise control**, refer to the corresponding section.

Active Safety Brake with Distance Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance



This system allows:
- the driver to be warned that their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front,
- a collision to be prevented, or its severity to be limited, by reducing the vehicle's speed.

This system is a driving aid that includes three functions:
- Distance Alert (alert if there is a risk of collision),
- Intelligent emergency braking assistance,
- Active Safety Brake (automatic emergency braking).



The vehicle has a camera located at the top of the windscreen.

! This system is designed to assist the driver and improve road safety.
It is the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor the state of the traffic, observing the driving regulations.
This system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

i As soon as the system detects a potential obstacle, it prepares the braking circuit in case automatic braking is needed. This may cause a slight noise and a slight sensation of deceleration.

Deactivation/Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.

This system can be deactivated or activated via the vehicle settings menu.

Deactivation of the system is signalled by the illumination of this indicator lamp, accompanied by the display of a message.

Operating conditions and limits

The ESC system must not be faulty.
The DSC/ASR systems must not be deactivated.
All passenger seat belts must be fastened.
Driving at a steady speed on roads with few bends is required.

In the following cases, deactivating the system via the vehicle's configuration menu is advised:
- towing a trailer,
- carrying long objects on roof bars or roof rack,
- with snow chains fitted,
- before using an automatic car wash, with the engine running,
- before placing the vehicle on a rolling road in a workshop,
- towed vehicle, engine running,
- following an impact to the windscreen close to the detection camera.

The system is automatically deactivated after the use of certain "space-saver" type spare wheels is detected (smaller diameter).
The system is automatically deactivated after detection of a fault with the brake pedal switch or with at least two brake lamps.

It is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified. Consequently, always stay in control of your vehicle and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

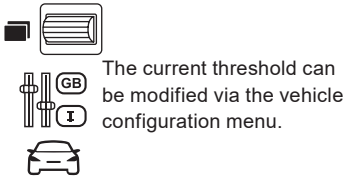
After an impact, the function automatically stops operating. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Distance Alert

It warns the driver if his vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front or a pedestrian present in his traffic lane.

Modifying the alert trigger threshold

This threshold determines how you wish to be warned of the presence of a vehicle moving or stationary in front of you, or a pedestrian present in your traffic lane.



The current threshold can be modified via the vehicle configuration menu.

You can select one of three pre-defined thresholds:
- "**Distant**",
- "**Normal**",
- "**Close**".

The last threshold selected is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

Operation

Depending on the degree of risk of collision detected by the system and the alert threshold chosen by the driver, different levels of alert can be triggered and displayed in the instrument panel.
They take account of the vehicle dynamics, the speed of your vehicle and the one in front, the environmental conditions, the operation of the vehicle (cornering, actions on the pedals, etc.) to trigger the alert at the best moment.



Level 1 (orange): visual alert only, signalling to you that the vehicle in front is very close.
The message "**Vehicle close**" is displayed.

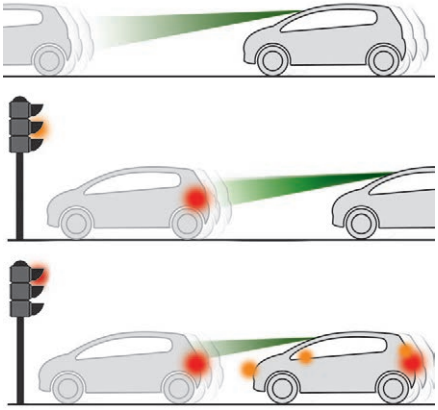
Level 2 (red): visual and audible alert, warning you that a collision is imminent.
The message "**Brake!**" is displayed.
Level 3: finally, in some cases, a haptic alert in the form of micro-braking may be given to confirm the risk of collision.

Where the speed of your vehicle is too high approaching another vehicle, the first level of alert may not be displayed: the level 2 alert may be displayed directly.
Important: the level 1 alert is never displayed for a stationary obstacle or when the "**Close**" trigger threshold has been selected.

Intelligent emergency braking assistance

If the driver brakes, but not sufficiently to avoid a collision, this system will supplement the braking, within the limits of the laws of physics. This assistance will only be provided if you press the brake pedal.

Active Safety Brake



This function, also called automatic emergency braking, intervenes following the alerts if the driver does not react quickly enough and does not operate the vehicle's brakes.
It aims to reduce the speed of impact or avoid a frontal collision by your vehicle where the driver fails to react.

Operation

The system operates under the following conditions:
- The vehicle's speed does not exceed 37 mph (60 km/h) when a pedestrian is detected.
- The vehicle's speed does not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) when a stationary vehicle is detected.
- The vehicle's speed must be between 6 mph and 53 mph (10 km/h and 85 km/h) when a moving vehicle is detected.

If the camera has confirmed the presence of a vehicle or a pedestrian, this warning lamp flashes (for about 10 seconds) once the function is acting on the vehicle's brakes.

With an automatic gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, keep the brake pedal pressed down to prevent the vehicle from starting off again.
With a manual gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the engine may stall.

The driver can maintain control of the vehicle at any time by sharply turning the steering wheel and/or pressing the accelerator pedal.

Operation of the function may be felt by slight vibration in the brake pedal.
If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds.

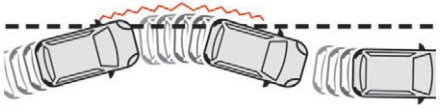
Malfunction

In the event of a fault with the system, you are alerted by the continuous illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

If these warning lamps come on after the engine has been switched off and restarted, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Active Lane Departure Warning System

Using a camera located at the top of the windscreen to identify lane markings on the ground and the edges of the road (depending on version), the system corrects the trajectory of the vehicle while alerting the driver if it detects a risk of involuntarily crossing a line or hard shoulder (depending on version).
This system is particularly useful on motorways and expressways.



Conditions for operation

The speed of the vehicle must be between 40 and 112 mph (65 and 180 km/h).
The driver must hold the wheel with both hands.
The change of trajectory must not be accompanied by operation of the direction indicators.
The ASR/DSC systems must be activated and not faulty.

! This system is a driving aid which cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. The driver must remain in control of the vehicle in all circumstances.
The system helps the driver only when there is a risk of the vehicle involuntarily wandering from the lane in which it is being driven. It does not manage the safe driving distance, the speed of the vehicle or the brakes.
The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands in a way that allows control to be maintained in circumstances where the system is not able to intervene (if lane markings disappear, for example).
It is necessary to observe the highway code and take a break every two hours.

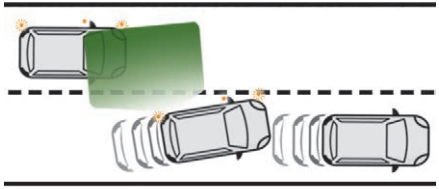
Operation

Once the system identifies a risk of the vehicle involuntarily crossing one of the lane markings detected or a lane limit (e.g. grass border), it makes the correction to the trajectory necessary to return the vehicle to its initial path.
The driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.

This warning lamp flashes during trajectory correction.

i The driver can prevent the correction by keeping a firm grip on the wheel (during an avoiding manoeuvre, for example).
The correction is interrupted if the direction indicators are operated.

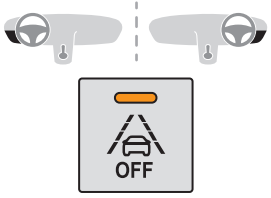
! If the system detects that the driver is not holding the wheel firmly enough during an automatic correction of trajectory, it interrupts the correction. An alert is triggered to encourage the driver to take back control of the vehicle.



While the direction indicators are on and for a few seconds after switching them off, the system considers that any change of trajectory is voluntary and no correction is triggered during this period.

Deactivation/Activation

The system is **activated** every time the ignition is switched on.



☞ To deactivate the system, press this button.

Deactivation is signalled by **the lighting of the indicator lamp** on the button and this warning lamp on the instrument panel.

Reactivation is by another press, the indicator lamp on the button and the warning lamp switch off.

Driving situations and associated alerts

The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed depending on the driving situation.
The display of these alerts is not sequential.

Status of the function	Indicator lamp	Display and/or associated message	Comments
OFF		 (grey)	System deactivated.
ON		 (grey)	System active, conditions not met: - speed below 40 mph (65 km/h), - no lane marking recognised, - ESC deactivated or operation triggered, - "sporty" driving.
ON		 (grey)	Automatic deactivation/standby of the system (for example: detection of a trailer, use of the "space-saver" spare wheel provided with the vehicle).

Status of the function	Indicator lamp	Display and/or associated message	Comments
ON		 (green)	Detection of lane markings. Speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).
ON		 (orange)/(green)	The system corrects the trajectory on the side where the risk of involuntary crossing is detected (orange line).
ON		 (orange)/(green) "Take control of the vehicle".	- If, during correction, the system detects that the driver has not held the wheel for a few seconds, it interrupts the correction and returns control to the driver. - During correction of the trajectory, if the system determines that the correction will not be enough and that a solid line is crossed (orange line): the driver is warned that they must complete the correction of the trajectory.

Operating limits

The system goes into standby automatically in the following cases:
- the ASR/DSC systems are deactivated or the ESC operation is triggered,
- speed below 40 mph (65 km/h) or greater than 112 mph (180 km/h),
- connected electrically to a trailer,
- use of the "space-saver" spare wheel detected (as detection is not immediate, deactivation of the system is recommended),
- dynamic driving style detected, pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal,
- driving where there are no lane markings,
- activation of the direction indicators,
- crossing the inside line on a bend,
- driving in a tight corner,
- inactivity by the driver detected during correction.

During a correction, if the driver is inactive (not holding the steering wheel for 10 seconds), a warning message appears. If the driver remains inactive (not holding the steering wheel for 2 more seconds), the correction is interrupted.

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:
- conditions of poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, snowfall, rain, fog),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light),
- windscreen area located in front of the camera: dirty, misted, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
- lane markings worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, etc.),
- running close to the vehicle in front (the lane markings may not be detected),
- roads that are narrow, winding, etc.

Risk of undesirable operation

Deactivation of the system is recommended in the following situations:
- driving on a road surface in poor condition,
- unfavourable climatic conditions,
- driving on slippery surfaces (ice).

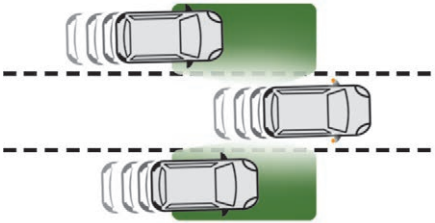
The system is not intended for driving in the following situations:
- driving on a racing circuit,
- driving with a trailer,
- driving on a rolling stand,
- driving on unstable surfaces.

Malfunction

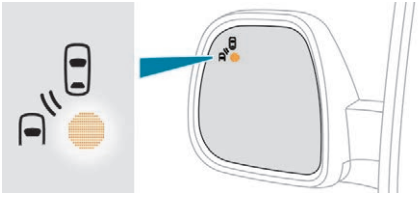


In the event of a fault with the system, you are alerted by the illumination of these warning lamps in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Blind Spot Detection



This driving assistance system warns the driver of the presence of another vehicle in the blind spot angle of his vehicle (areas masked from the driver's field of vision), as soon as this presents a potential danger.



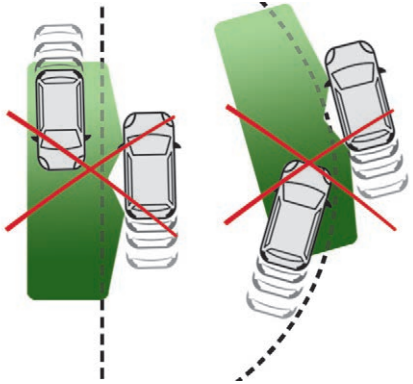
A warning lamp appears in the door mirror on the side in question:

- **fixed**, immediately, when being overtaken,
- **flashing**, after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly, and when the direction indicator is used.

! This system is designed to improve safety when driving and is in no circumstances a substitute for the use of the interior rear view mirror and door mirrors. It is the driver's responsibility to constantly check the traffic, to assess the distances and relative speeds of other vehicles and to predict their movements before deciding whether to change lane.

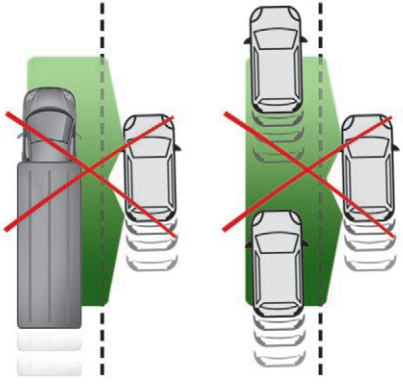
The alert is given by a warning lamp which comes on in the door mirror on the side in question as soon as a vehicle – car, lorry, bicycle – is detected and the following conditions are fulfilled:

- all the vehicles must be moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes,
- the speed of the vehicle must be between 7 and 87 mph (12 and 140 km/h),
- you overtake a vehicle with a speed difference of less than 6 mph (10 km/h),
- a vehicle overtakes you with a speed difference of less than 15 mph (25 km/h),
- the traffic must be flowing normally,
- in the case of an overtaking manoeuvre, if this is prolonged and the vehicle being overtaken returns to the blind spot,
- you are driving on a straight or slightly curved road,
- your vehicle is not towing a trailer, a caravan, etc.



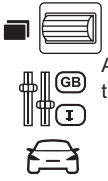
No alert will be given in the following situations:

- in the presence of non-moving objects (parked vehicles, barriers, street lamps, road signs, etc.),
- with vehicles moving in the opposite direction,
- driving on a winding road or a sharp corner,



- when overtaking or being overtaken by a very long vehicle (lorry, bus, etc.) which is both in the rear blind spot and present in the driver's front field of vision,
- in very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object,
- when overtaking quickly.

Activation/Deactivation



Activation or deactivation is set via the vehicle configuration menu.

The system state remains in memory when the ignition is switched off.

The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towbar approved by PEUGEOT.

Malfunction

If a fault occurs, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

The system may suffer temporary interference in certain weather conditions (rain, hail, etc.).
In particular, driving on a wet surface or moving from a dry area to a wet area can cause false alerts (for example, the presence of a fog of water droplets in the blind spot angle is interpreted as a vehicle).
In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow.
Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors or the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper correct operation of the system.

High-pressure jet wash
When washing your vehicle, keep the lance at least 30 cm away from the sensors.

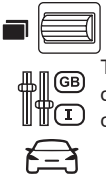
Fatigue detection system

Take a break as soon as you feel tired or at least every two hours.

Depending on version, the function consists of just the "Driver Attention Warning" system or of this combined with the "Driver Attention Alert" system.

! These systems cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver who must remain in control of their decisions. It is never the intention of these systems to keep the driver awake or to prevent the driver from falling asleep at the wheel.
It is the driver's responsibility to stop if feeling tired.

Activation/Deactivation



The function is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

The state of the system stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

Driver Attention Warning

The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects that the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).

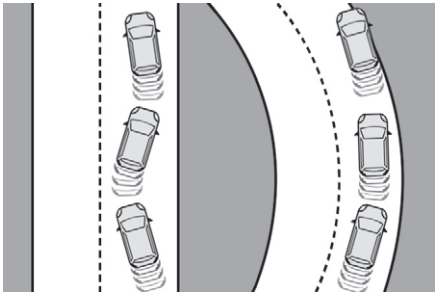
This alert is issued via the display of a message encouraging you to take a break, accompanied by an audible signal.
If the driver does not follow this advice, the alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped.

The system resets itself if one of the following conditions is met:
- engine running, the vehicle has been stationary for more than 15 minutes,
- the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes,
- the driver's seat belt is unfastened and their door is opened.

i As soon as the speed of the vehicle drops below 40 mph (65 km/h), the system goes into standby.
The driving time is counted again once the speed is above 40 mph (65 km/h).

Driver Attention Alert

Depending on version, the "Driver Attention Warning" system is combined with the "Driver Attention Alert" system.



Using a camera placed at the top of the windscreen, the system assesses the driver's level of vigilance by identifying variations in trajectory compared to the lane markings.

This system is particularly suited to fast roads (speed higher than 40 mph (65 km/h)).

When the system interprets the behaviour of the vehicle as indicating a certain threshold of driver fatigue or inattention, it triggers the first level of alert.
The driver is then alerted by the message "**Take care!**", accompanied by an audible signal.

After three first level alerts, the system triggers a further alert with the message "**Dangerous driving: take a break**", accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal.

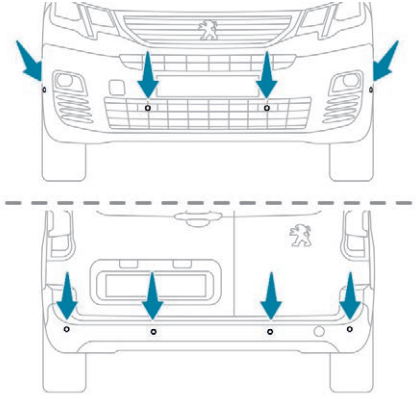
In certain driving conditions (poor road surface or strong winds), the system may give alerts irrespective of the driver's level of vigilance.

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:

- poor visibility (inadequate lighting of the roadway, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, etc.),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light, etc.),
- windscreen area located in front of the camera: dirty, misted, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
- lane markings absent, worn, concealed (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, etc.),
- close to the vehicle ahead (lane markings not detected),
- roads that are narrow, winding, etc.

Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera. The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera. In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.
Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could obstruct the detection camera.

Parking sensors



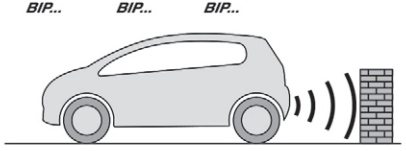
Using sensors located in the bumper, this function warns of the proximity of obstacles (e.g. pedestrian, vehicle, tree, barrier) entering their field of detection.

This function is a manoeuvring aid which cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. The driver must remain attentive and stay in control of their vehicle.
They must always check the vehicle's surroundings before undertaking a manoeuvre.
During the entire manoeuvre, the driver must ensure that the space remains clear.

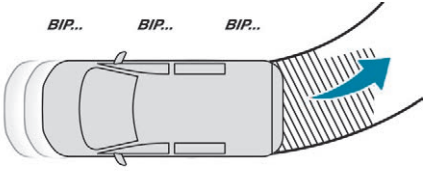
Rear parking sensors

The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear.
This is confirmed by an audible signal.
The system is switched off when you come out of reverse gear.

Audible assistance



The function signals the presence of obstacles present both within the sensors' detection zone and in the vehicle path defined by the orientation of the steering wheel.



Depending on version, in the example shown, only the obstacles present in the shaded area will be signalled by the audible assistance.

The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.
When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than about thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.
The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) allows you to identify the side on which the obstacle is located.

Adjusting the audible signal

On versions equipped with PEUGEOT Connect Radio, pressing this button opens the audible signal volume adjustment window.

Visual assistance



It supplements the audible assistance, without taking account of the vehicle's trajectory, by displaying bars on the screen that represent the distance between the obstacle and the vehicle (white: more distant obstacles, orange: close obstacles, red: very close obstacles).
When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed on the screen.

Front parking sensors

In addition to the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is still below 6 mph (10 km/h).
The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if an obstacle is no longer detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) locates the obstacle in relation to the vehicle – in the vehicle trajectory, in front or behind.

Side parking sensors



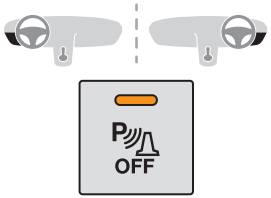
Using four additional sensors located on the sides of the front and rear bumpers, the system records the position of fixed obstacles during the manoeuvre and signals them when they are located by the sides of the vehicle.

Only fixed obstacles are signalled correctly. Moving obstacles detected at the beginning of the manoeuvre may be signalled mistakenly, while moving obstacles which appear at the sides of the vehicle and which were not previously recorded will not be signalled.

! The objects memorised during the manoeuvre will no longer be stored after switching off the ignition.

Deactivation/Activation

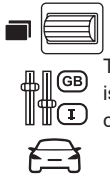
Without audio system



☞ To deactivate or activate the system, press this button.

The indicator lamp **is lit** when the system is **deactivated**.

With audio system or touch screen



The deactivation or activation is carried out via the vehicle configuration menu.

The state of the system stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.



i The rear parking sensors system will be deactivated automatically if a trailer or bicycle carrier is connected to a towing device installed in line with the manufacturer's recommendations.
In this case, the outline of a trailer is displayed at the rear of the image of the vehicle.

The parking sensors are deactivated while the Park Assist system is measuring a space.
For more information on the **Park Assist**, refer to the corresponding section.

Operating limits

- Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.
- Sounds such as those emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills, etc.) may interfere with the vehicle's sensors.
- Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.
- Accumulated snow or dead leaves on the road surface can interfere with the vehicle's sensors.
- A front or rear impact to the vehicle can distort the settings of the sensors, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be incorrect.
- The tilting of the vehicle if the boot is very loaded can affect the distance measurements.
- The sensors may be affected by poor weather conditions (heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall, etc.).

Maintenance recommendations

i In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.

i **High pressure jet wash**
When washing your vehicle, keep the lance at least 12 inches (30 cm) away from the sensors.

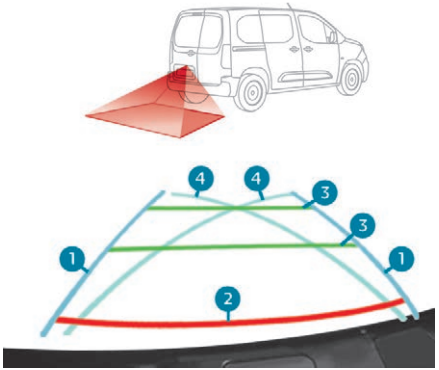
Malfunction

If a fault occurs when shifting to reverse, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal (short beep).

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Reversing camera

With the ignition on, this system uses a camera located near the third brake lamp to display a view of the rear of your vehicle on the output screen (if it is a panel van or has a solid partition).
The reversing camera is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged. The image is displayed on the output screen. The output screen switches off when the gearbox is in neutral or in a forward gear.



The blue lines **1** represent the general direction of the vehicle (the gap corresponds to the width of your vehicle with the mirrors).
The red line **2** represents a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.
The green lines **3** represent distances of about 1 and 2 metres beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.
The turquoise blue curves **4** represent the maximum turning circle.

! The reversing camera is a driving aid which cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

! Some objects may not be seen by the camera.

! Certain vehicles may be difficult to see (dark colours, headlamps off) when the brightness of the screen is reduced by the vehicle's lighting dimmer.

! The image quality may be affected by the environment, the exterior conditions (rain, dirt, dust), the driving mode, the lighting conditions (night, low sun).
In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.

! Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are in reality.
During parking manoeuvres and lane changes, it is important to check the sides of the vehicle using the mirrors.
The rear parking sensors also provide information on the vehicle's surroundings.

Operating limits

The system may be disrupted (or even damaged) and not work in the following situations:

- Installation of a bicycle carrier on the tailgate or side-hinged door (depending on version).
- Attachment of a trailer to the towball.
- Driving with a door open.

! Please note, the camera must not be obscured (by a sticker, a bicycle carrier, etc.).

i The field of vision of the camera may vary depending on the load in vehicle.

Maintenance recommendations

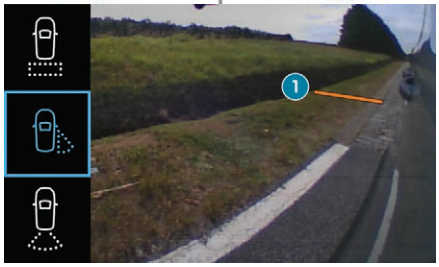
In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the camera is not covered by mud, frost or snow.
Check the cleanliness of the camera lens regularly.
If necessary, clean the camera with a soft, dry cloth.
When washing the vehicle using a high-pressure jet, keep the spray directed at least 30 cm away from the camera.

Surround Rear Vision

With the ignition on, in order to improve visibility of the passenger side blind spot and the rear of the vehicle, this system uses two cameras to display the views of the vehicle's close surroundings on the output screen (if it is a panel van or has a solid partition).

This system has three sub-functions:





- **Passenger side view**: shows the area at the passenger side of the vehicle.

The orange line **1** represents a distance of 5 m from the rear bumper.

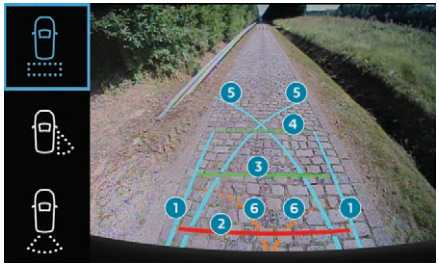




- **Monitoring rear view**: allows a long-distance view of the area at the rear.

The orange line **1** represents a distance of 5 m from the rear bumper.





- The **visual reversing aid**: allows a view of the area close to the rear of the vehicle.

The blue dimension lines **1** represent the width of your vehicle with the mirrors unfolded.
The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the rear bumper; the two green lines **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m, respectively.
The blue curves **5** appear successively; they are based on the position of the steering wheel and represent the turning circle radius of your vehicle.
The orange dashes **6** represent the opening radii of the rear doors.

! This system is a driving aid which cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
Please routinely check your exterior mirrors while driving and during manoeuvres.

! Some items may not be seen by the rear camera.

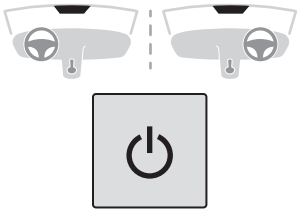
! Certain vehicles may be difficult to see (dark colours, headlamps off) when the brightness of the screen is reduced by the vehicle's lighting dimmer.

! The image quality may be affected by the environment, the exterior conditions (rain, dirt, dust), the driving mode, the lighting conditions (night, low sun).
In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.

! Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are in reality.
During parking manoeuvres and lane changes, it is important to check the sides of the vehicle using the mirrors.
The rear parking sensors also provide information on the vehicle's surroundings.

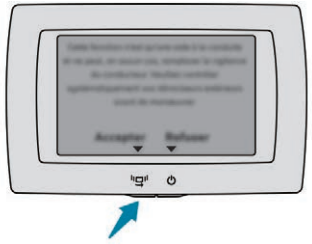
Activation/Deactivation

The system starts when the ignition is switched on.



☞ With the ignition on, press the corresponding button below the screen to switch the output screen on/off.

A message appears.



☞ Read this message then confirm with the button corresponding to the response "**Accept**".

The output screen comes on.

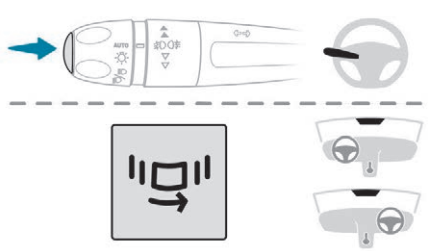
☞ With the engine running, press this button to switch the output screen off.

The function is automatically paused (the output screen becomes grey) **in reverse**, above **9 mph (15 km/h)**.
The function restarts when the vehicle is once more travelling at a speed below this threshold.

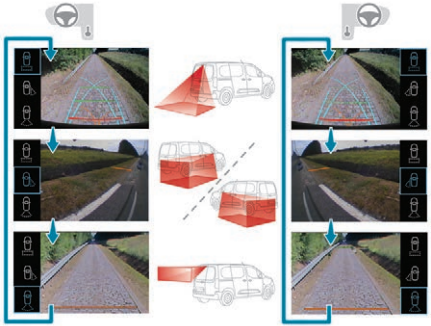
Operation

☞ **In neutral**, the **monitoring rear view** is displayed by default.

☞ **When reverse is engaged**, the **visual reversing aid** is displayed on the screen (even if it is switched off).



☞ **To change the view**, press the end of the lighting control stalk or press the corresponding button located below the screen.



The reconstruction of the surroundings is done by the **monitoring rear view** and the **passenger side view** only.

Operating limits

The system may be disrupted (or even damaged) and not work in the following situations:

- Installation of a bicycle carrier on the tailgate or side-hinged door (depending on version).
- Attachment of a trailer to the towball.
- Driving with a door open.

Please note, the cameras must not be obscured (by a sticker, a bicycle carrier, etc.).

The field of vision of the rear camera (**monitoring rear view** and **visual reversing aid**) may vary depending on the load in the vehicle.

If the side-hinged door is opened during use of the **monitoring rear view** or the **visual reversing** aid, in forward gear or reverse gear, the output screen becomes grey.
If the front passenger door is opened during use of the **passenger side view**, in forward gear or reverse gear, the output screen becomes grey.

If a trailer is attached to the towball, when reverse gear is engaged the **visual reversing aid** will no longer work until the trailer is disconnected. The **monitoring rear view** becomes the default view.

If the system develops a malfunction, go to a PEUGEOT dealer to avoid any safety problems.

Maintenance recommendations

In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors and cameras are not covered with mud, ice or snow.
Check the cleanliness of the camera lenses regularly.
If necessary, clean the cameras with a soft, dry cloth.

When washing your vehicle at high-pressure, direct the spray from at least 30 cm away from the cameras and parking sensors.

Under-inflation detection

This system automatically monitors the tyre pressure while driving.

The system monitors the pressure in all four tyres, once the vehicle is moving.
It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised after every tyre pressure adjustment or wheel change**.
The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects a drop in the pressure of one or more tyres.

The tyre under-inflation detection system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
This system still requires you to check the tyre inflation pressures (including the spare wheel) every month as well as before a long journey.
Driving with under-inflated tyres impairs handling, extends braking distances and causes early tyre wear, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy loads, high speeds, long journeys).

Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.

The tyre pressure specifications for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.
For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.
Tyre pressures should be checked when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds).
Otherwise (when hot), add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

Snow chains
The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Under-inflation alert



This warning is indicated by fixed illumination of the warning lamp, an audible signal and, depending on the equipment installed, a message displayed on the screen.

☞ Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and sudden braking.
☞ Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

! The loss of pressure detected does not always cause visible bulging of the tyre. Do not satisfy yourself with just a visual check.

☞ In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment),

or

☞ if you have a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of the four tyres when cold,

or

☞ if it is not possible to carry out this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.

i The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

Reinitialisation

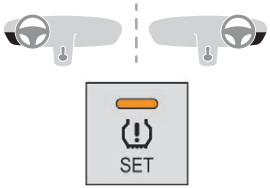
The system must be reinitialised after any adjustment to the pressure of one or more tyres, and after changing one or more wheels.

! Before reinitialising the system, ensure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the conditions of use of the vehicle and conform to the recommendations on the tyre pressure label.
The under-inflation alert can only be relied on if the reinitialisation of the system has been done with the pressures in the four tyres correctly adjusted.
The under-inflation detection system does not give a warning if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.

The system is initialised with the ignition on and the vehicle stationary.

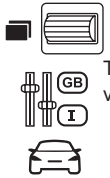
i The new pressure parameters saved are considered reference values by the system.

Without audio system



☞ Press this button for about 3 seconds then release it, an audible signal confirms the reinitialisation.

With audio system or touch screen



The reinitialisation is carried out via the vehicle configuration menu.

Malfunction



The flashing and then fixed illumination of the under-inflation warning lamp accompanied by illumination of the Service warning lamp indicates a fault with the system.

In this case, under-inflation monitoring of the tyres is no longer assured.
Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i Before doing anything to the system, the pressures of the four tyres must be checked and the system reinitialised.



PEUGEOT & TOTAL

A PARTNERSHIP FOR PERFORMANCE!

The PEUGEOTTOTAL team knows how to push back the limits of performance to win victories in the most difficult conditions, as confirmed by the first three places achieved in 2017.
To obtain these exceptional results, the PEUGEOT Sport teams chose TOTAL QUARTZ for the PEUGEOT 3008 DKR, a high-tech lubricant that protects the engine in the most severe conditions.

TOTAL QUARTZ protects your engine against the effects of time.

TOTAL QUARTZ Ineo First is a high performance lubricant, the result of work done together by PEUGEOT and TOTAL R&D. Specially formulated for the engines in PEUGEOT vehicles, its innovative technology significantly reduces CO_2 emissions and keeps your engine clean.

PEUGEOT RECOMMENDS TOTAL

PEUGEOT TOTAL
OFFICIAL PARTNERS

Compatibility of fuels

Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and which can be obtained from filling stations:

E5
E10

Petrol that meets standard EN228, mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN15376.

i The only petrol additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations:

B7

Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester),



B10

Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester),

XTL

Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

B20
B30

B20 or B30 fuel that meets the standard EN16709 can be used with your Diesel engine. However, the use of this fuel, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The use of any other type of (bio)fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel, etc.) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

i The only Diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

Diesel at low temperature

At temperatures below 0°C (+32°F), the formation of paraffins in summer-type Diesel fuels could result in an abnormal operation of the fuel supply circuit. To avoid this, we recommend using winter-type Diesel fuel and keeping the fuel tank more than 50% full.
If, despite this, at temperatures below -15°C (+5°F) the engine has problems starting, just leave the vehicle in a garage or heated workshop for a little while.

Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage your vehicle's engine.
In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific trade name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.
For any additional information, contact a dealer.

Fuel tank

Capacity of the tank:
- around **61 litres** (petrol).
- around **50 litres** (Diesel).

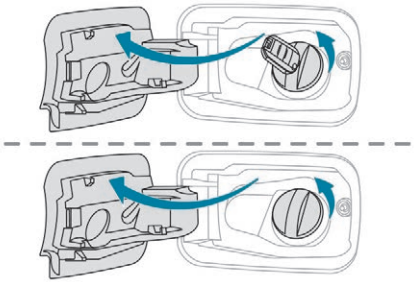
Opening the fuel filler flap

- ☞ **You must switch off the engine.**
- ☞ With Keyless Entry and Starting, unlock the vehicle.
- ☞ Open the fuel filler flap.

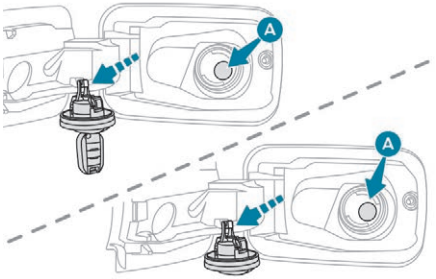
! If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition using the key, or the START/STOP button if your vehicle has Keyless Entry and Starting.

At least 6 litres of fuel must be added, in order to be registered by the fuel gauge.
Opening the filler cap may create a noise caused by an inrush of air. This vacuum is entirely normal, resulting from the sealing of the fuel system.

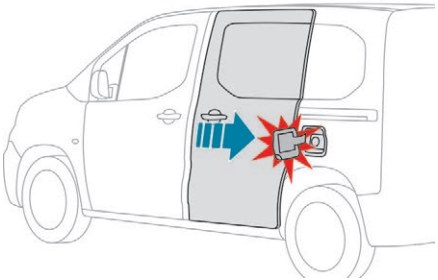
- ☞ Take care to select the pump that delivers the correct fuel type for your vehicle's engine (see a reminder label on the inside of the fuel filler flap).



- ☞ With a conventional key, insert the key into the filler cap, then turn the key to the left.



- ☞ Unscrew and remove the filler cap, then place it on the holder located on the fuel filler flap.
- ☞ Insert the nozzle and push it in fully (pushing on the metal valve **A**).
- ☞ Fill the tank. Do not continue past the third cut-off of the nozzle, as this may cause malfunctions.
- ☞ Put the filler cap back in place and close it by turning to the right.
- ☞ Push the fuel filler flap to close it (your vehicle must be unlocked).



! 

If your vehicle is equipped with one, do not open the left-hand sliding side door when the fuel filler flap is open, otherwise there is a risk that the fuel filler flap and the sliding door may be damaged and the person filling up may be injured.



If the fuel filler flap is open and you try to open the left-hand side door, a mechanism prevents it from being opened.
The door can be opened half way however. Close the fuel filler flap to regain use of the door.

Your vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, a device which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.

If you have put in the wrong fuel for your vehicle, you must have the fuel tank drained and filled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.

Low fuel level



When the low fuel level in the tank is reached, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

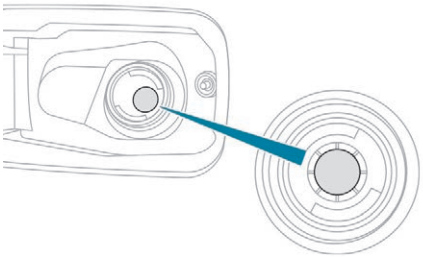
When it first comes on, **less than 6 litres** of fuel remain in the tank.
You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.

Fuel cut-off

Your vehicle is fitted with a safety system that cuts off the supply of fuel in the event of an impact.

Diesel misfuel prevention

Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It helps avoid the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.
Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device appears when the filler cap is removed.



When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the fuel filler neck of your Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.

Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.

It is still possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank slowly.
In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device.

Driving abroad
As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible.
Not all Diesel vehicles are fitted with misfuel protection, so before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with the PEUGEOT dealer network, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you intend to travel.

Snow chains



In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

! Snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

i Take account of the legislation in force in your country on the use of snow chains and the maximum authorised speed.

Installation tips

- ☞ If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- ☞ Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks under the wheels to prevent movement of your vehicle.
- ☞ Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- ☞ Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 31 mph (50 km/h).
- ☞ Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

i It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

! Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

Use only the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to your vehicle:

Original tyre size	Maximum link size (mm)
195/65 R15	9
205/60 R16	
205/55 R17	
215/65 R16	
215/60 R17	cannot be fitted with chains

You can also use snow socks.
For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Towing device

Load distribution

- ☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle, and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. The maximum towed load must be reduced by 10 % for every 1,000 metres of altitude.

i Use towing devices and their original harnesses approved by PEUGEOT. It is recommended that the installation be performed by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
If the towing device is not fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer, it must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.
Certain driving assistance or manoeuvring assistance functions are automatically deactivated if an approved towbar is used.

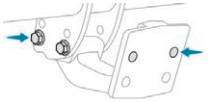
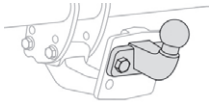
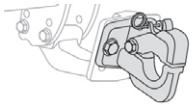
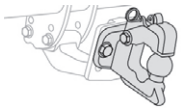
! Observe the maximum authorised towable weight, indicated on your vehicle's registration certificate, the manufacturer's label and in the **Technical data** section of this guide.
Complying with the maximum authorised nose weight (towball) also includes the use of accessories (bicycle carriers, tow boxes, etc.).

! Observe the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.

Towing devices

Depending on equipment, the vehicle can be fitted with one of the following towing devices:

Approval No.: E1 R55 (reference 2)

	Type of towing device	**Mounting position then towing device reference**	
		 Plate fixed at the bottom and towing device fixed at the **top**	 Plate fixed at the bottom and towing device fixed at the **bottom**
	Plate + G1 towball	- LCV std (standard) L1 - LCV std (standard) L2	- LCV cross (heavy-duty) L1 - LCV cross (heavy-duty) L2
	Plate + Simple hook CL	- LCV std (standard) L1 - LCV std (standard) L2 - LCV cross (heavy-duty) L1 - LCV cross (heavy-duty) L2	X
	Plate + Combined hook CK		

i For more information on your towing device, refer to the user guide supplied with this equipment.

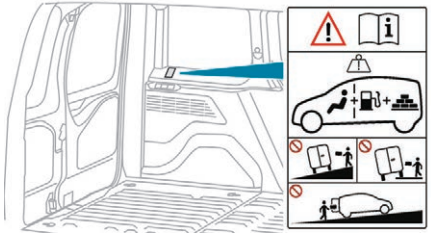
! Remove the quickly detachable towball when not towing a trailer.

Overload indicator

The overload indicator is a driving aid and informs you that the **maximum authorised weight** has been exceeded; this may be either the gross vehicle weight (GVW) or the maximum authorised weight on either axle (front and rear) (GAWR).

! The indicator does not relieve the user from the responsibility.

i Even if you correctly measure the weight of the vehicle's load, any factor that may vary this weight (seating the driver/ additional passengers or taking on additional fuel) after the measurement may put the vehicle into the overload condition.



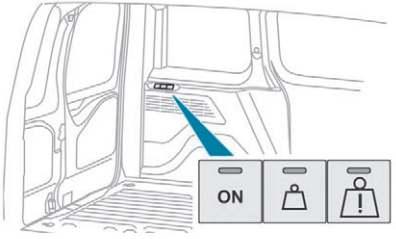
! - The load includes the weight of the items stored in the loading area (including any fittings such as shelves), but also the weight of all persons on board the vehicle, the amount of fuel and various equipment fitted on the vehicle.
- For optimal performance, the vehicle must be parked and loaded on level ground (avoid the following conditions: parking on a slope or straddling a pavement).

! Attaching a trailer to your vehicle may affect the operation of the system.

Operation

The measurement of the weight on board your vehicle starts:

☞ Automatically when the engine restarts.





☞ When the vehicle is stopped, press this button located in the loading area. The system is then active for 5 minutes.

Measurement display in the loading area



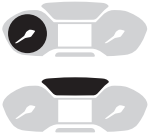
If the weight of the vehicle's load **approaches the maximum authorized weight**, the lamps in these buttons come on.



If the weight of the vehicle's load **exceeds the maximum authorized weight**, the lamps in these buttons come on.

7

Measurement display on the instrument panel.



If the weight of the vehicle's load **exceeds the maximum authorized weight**, this warning lamp comes on.

Malfunction

Display of the malfunction in the loading area



After the measurement is triggered from the loading area, the LEDs of the 3 buttons flash simultaneously for about 3 seconds and then go out.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Display on the instrument panel





These warning lamps come on, together with a message.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Energy economy mode

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.
After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined duration of about forty minutes.

Switching to this mode

A message appears in the instrument panel screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

If a telephone call is being made at this time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system.

Exiting the mode

These functions will be automatically restored the next time the vehicle is used.
In order to restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:

- for less than ten minutes, to use the equipment for approximately five minutes,
- for more than ten minutes, to use the equipment for up to approximately thirty minutes.

Let the engine run for the duration specified to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.
Do not repeatedly and continuously restart the engine in order to charge the battery.

A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.
For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Load reduction mode

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.

When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as air conditioning, heated rear screen, etc.

The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

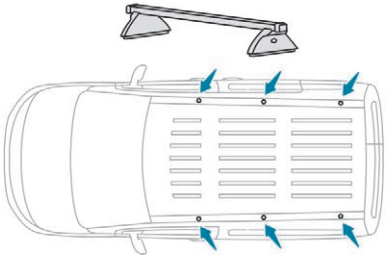
Roof bars/Roof rack

Recommendations
Distribute the load uniformly, taking care to avoid overloading one of the sides.
Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
Secure the load firmly.
Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds and its stability may be affected.
Regularly check the security and tight fastening of the roof bars and racks, at least before each trip.

In the event of loading (**not exceeding** 40 cm in height) on the roof, **do not exceed** the following loads:
- Transverse bars on longitudinal bars: **80 kg**.
- Two transverse bars bolted to the roof: **100 kg**.
- Three transverse bars bolted to the roof: **150 kg**.
- An aluminium rack: **120 kg**.
- A steel rack: **115 kg**.

If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars or the roof rack and the fixings on the vehicle.
Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects which are longer than the vehicle.

As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use the roof bars and racks approved for your vehicle.
Observe the instructions on fitting and use contained in the guide supplied with the roof bars and racks.



To fit the transverse roof bars or a roof rack, use the fixing points provided for this purpose:
- ☞ Remove the fixing covers installed on the vehicle.
- ☞ Put each fixing in place and lock them on the roof one by one.
- ☞ Ensure that the roof bars or the roof rack are correctly fitted (by shaking them).

The bars are suitable for each fixing point.

Bonnet



Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid the risk of injury related to an automatic change to START mode.

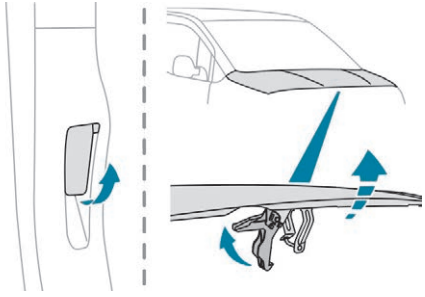
The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents opening of the bonnet when the left-hand front door is shut.

When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the stay with care (risk of burns), using the protected area.
When the bonnet is open, take care not to damage the safety catch.
Do not open the bonnet under very windy conditions.

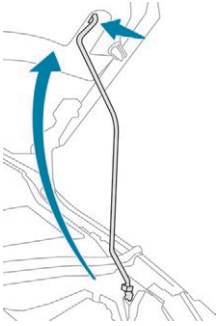
The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

Opening

☞ Open the left-hand front door.



☞ Pull the release lever, located at the bottom of the door aperture, towards you.
☞ Lift the safety catch and raise the bonnet.



☞ Unclip the stay from its housing and place it in the support slot to hold the bonnet open.

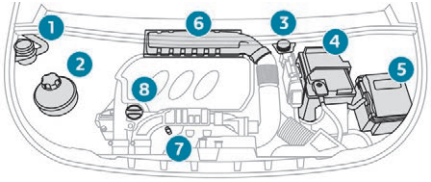
Closing

☞ Take the stay out of the support slot.
☞ Clip the stay in its housing.
☞ Lower the bonnet and release it near the end of its travel.
☞ Pull on the bonnet to check that it is fully latched.

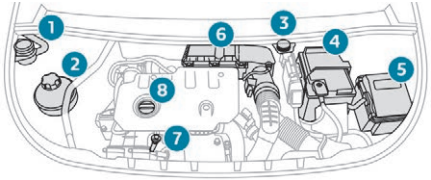
Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

Engines

Petrol



Diesel



These engines are examples provided as a guide.
The locations of the dipstick and engine oil filler cap may vary.

1. Screenwash fluid reservoir.
2. Engine coolant reservoir.
3. Brake fluid reservoir.
4. Battery.
5. Fusebox.
6. Air filter.
7. Engine oil dipstick.
8. Engine oil filler cap.

The diesel circuit is under very high pressure.
All work on this circuit must be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Checking levels

Check all of these levels regularly, in line with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated.
If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The fluids must comply with the manufacturer's recommendations and with the vehicle's engine.

Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Used products

Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.

Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Take used oil to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop and dispose of it in the containers reserved for this purpose.

Engine oil level

The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel for vehicles equipped with an electric gauge, or using the dipstick.

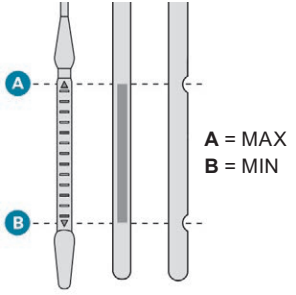
To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface with the engine stopped for more than 30 minutes.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). PEUGEOT recommends that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

Checking using the dipstick

The location of the dipstick is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and pull it out completely.
- Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean non-fluffy cloth.
- Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between marks **A** and **B**.



If you find that the level is above the **A** mark or below the **B** mark, **do not start the engine**.

- If the level is above the **MAX** mark (risk of damage to the engine), contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
- If the level is below the **MIN** mark, you must top up the engine oil.

Oil grade

Before topping up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Topping up the engine oil level

The location of the oil filler cap is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- ☞ Unscrew the oil filler cap to access the filler opening.
- ☞ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- ☞ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- ☞ Add more oil if necessary.
- ☞ After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

After topping up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping up.

Engine oil change

In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Brake fluid level



The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

Changing the fluid

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.

Fluid specification

This fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Coolant level



Check the coolant level regularly. It is normal to top up this fluid between two services.

The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.
A low coolant level presents a risk of serious damage to your engine.
The level of this fluid should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.
If the level is close to or below the "MIN" mark, it is essential to top up.

When the engine is hot, the temperature of this fluid is regulated by the cooling fan.
In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any operation.
To avoid the risk of scalding when you need to top up in an emergency, wrap a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.
Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

Fluid specification

The fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Screenwash fluid level



Top up to the required level when necessary.

Tank capacity:

- 5.3 litres for the "very cold climate" versions.
- 2.2 litres for other versions.

Fluid specification

The screenwash fluid must be topped up with a ready for use mix.
In winter (temperatures below zero), a fluid with antifreeze must be used that is appropriate for the prevailing conditions, in order to preserve the elements of the system (pump, tank, ducts, etc.).
Filling with pure water is prohibited under all circumstances (risk of freezing, limestone deposits, etc.).

Diesel fuel additive level (Diesel with particle filter)



The additive reservoir low level is indicated by fixed illumination of one of these warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message that the particle filter additive level is too low.

Topping up

This additive must be topped up without delay by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

AdBlue level

An alert is triggered once the reserve level is reached.
To avoid the vehicle being immobilised as per regulations, you must top up with AdBlue.
For more information on **AdBlue and the SCR** system, and in particular topping it up, refer to the corresponding section.

Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.
Otherwise, have them checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance. However, check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

For more information on the precautions to take before starting work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification. Its replacement should be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Air filter



Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace it twice as often if necessary**.

Passenger compartment filter



Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace it twice as often if necessary**.

A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

Oil filter



Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Particle filter (Diesel)





The start of saturation of the particle filter is signalled by the temporary illumination of one of these warning lamps, accompanied by a message warning of the risk of the filter clogging up.

As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.
If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low Diesel additive level.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

On a new vehicle, the first particle filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a "burning" smell, which is perfectly normal.
Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

Brake disc wear



For all information on checking brake disc wear, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Parking brake



If excessive travel or a loss of effectiveness of this system is noticed, the parking brake must be adjusted, even between two services.

This system must be checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Automatic electronic parking brake



This system does not require any routine servicing. However, in case of an issue, do not hesitate to have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i For more information on the **Automatic electronic parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.

Wheels and tyres



The pressure must be checked on all tyres, including the spare wheel, when the tyres are "cold", at least once a month and before a long journey.

The pressures given on the tyre pressure label are valid for "cold" tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at more than 31 mph (50 km/h), 0.3 bar (30 kPa) should be added to the values given on the label.
Under-inflation increases fuel consumption.
Non-compliant tyre pressure causes premature wear on tyres and has an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding – Risk of an accident!

Driving with worn or damaged tyres reduces braking efficiency and control of the vehicle's steering. Regular inspections of the condition of tyres (tread and sides) and rims are recommended as well as making sure that valves are fitted.
Using different size wheels and tyres from those specified can affect the lifetime of tyres, wheel rotation, ground clearance and the speedometer reading and have an adverse effect on road holding.
Fitting different tyres on the front and rear axles can cause unwanted ESC regulation.

! Only use products recommended by PEUGEOT or products of equivalent quality and specification.
In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, PEUGEOT selects and offers very specific products.
After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.

AdBlue® (BlueHDi)

To respect the environment and ensure compliance with the Euro 6 standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of Diesel engines, PEUGEOT has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with a system that associates SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a Diesel particle filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

SCR system

Using a liquid called AdBlue® that contains urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of the nitrogen oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.



The AdBlue® is contained in **a special tank** holding about 17 litres.

Its capacity allows a driving range of approximately 5,600 miles (9,000 km), **highly dependent** on your driving style.

An alert system is triggered automatically once the reserve level is reached: you can then drive for a further 1,500 miles (2,400 km) before the tank is empty.

For more information on the **Warning and indicator lamps** and the associated alerts, or the **Indicators**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by regulations prevents starting of the engine.
If the SCR system is faulty, the level of emissions from your vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard: your vehicle becomes polluting.
In the event of a confirmed fault with the SCR system, you must go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible: after travelling a distance of 685 miles (1,100 km), a system will be triggered automatically to prevent engine starting.
In either case, a range indicator gives you the distance you can travel before the vehicle is immobilised.

Freezing of the AdBlue®
AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.
The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in very cold conditions.

Supply of AdBlue®

It is recommended that the AdBlue® is topped up as soon as the first alert is issued indicating that the reserve level has been reached.

In order to ensure that the SCR system operates correctly:
- Use only AdBlue® fluid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.
- Never transfer AdBlue® to another container: it would lose its purity.
- Never dilute AdBlue® with water.

You can obtain AdBlue® from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

You can also visit a service station equipped with AdBlue® pumps specially designed for private vehicles.

Never top up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

Recommendations on storage

AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above 25°C. It should be stored in a cool place and protected from direct sunlight. Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept for at least a year.
If the additive has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out.

Never keep containers or bottles of AdBlue® in your vehicle.

Precautions in use

AdBlue® is a urea-based solution. This fluid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (kept in a cool area).
In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and running water. In the event of contact with the eyes, immediately rinse the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes. If a burning sensation or irritation persists, get medical attention.
If swallowed, immediately rinse the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water.
In certain conditions (high ambient temperature, for example), the risk of ammonia being released

cannot be discounted: do not inhale the fluid. Ammonia vapour has an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

! Keep AdBlue® out of reach of children, in its original container or bottle.

Procedure

Before starting the top up procedure, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface.

In winter, check that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11°C. If not, due to freezing, the AdBlue® cannot be poured into the tank. Park your vehicle somewhere warmer for a few hours before topping up.

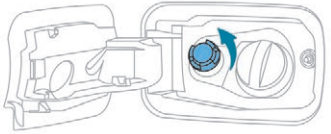
! In the event of an AdBlue® breakdown, confirmed by the message "Add AdBlue: Starting impossible", you must top up with at least 5 litres.

! Never pour AdBlue® into the Diesel fuel tank.

! If any AdBlue® is splashed, or if there are any spillages on the side of the body, rinse immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.
If the fluid has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

Access to the AdBlue® tank

A blue cap under the fuel filler flap indicates access to the AdBlue® tank.



- ☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key.
- ☞ Turn the AdBlue® blue filler cap anti-clockwise.
- ☞ Obtain an AdBlue® container (check the use-by date) and pour the contents of the container into your vehicle's AdBlue® tank.

Or

- ☞ Insert the AdBlue® pump nozzle and refill the tank until the nozzle stops automatically.

! Important:
To avoid overflowing the AdBlue® tank, it is recommended:

- ☞ To top up between 10 and 13 litres using AdBlue® containers.

Or

- ☞ When filling at a service station, to stop after the third automatic cut-off of the nozzle.

! Important: **in the event of a top-up after a breakdown because of a lack of AdBlue,** you must wait around 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, **without opening the driver's door, locking the vehicle, introducing the key into the ignition switch, or introducing the key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system into the passenger compartment**.
Switch on the ignition, then wait for 10 seconds before starting the engine.

Advice on care

General recommendations on the care and maintenance of your vehicle are given in the warranty and maintenance record.

Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging your vehicle:

- Do not clean your headlamps with a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with detergent or solvent products. Use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product.
- When using a high-pressure washer on stubborn dirt, avoid prolonged use on the headlamps, the lamps and their edges to avoid damaging their lacquer finish and seals.
- Never use an abrasive sponge to clean persistent dirt, as this may scratch the paint surface. Use a soft cloth with soapy water instead.
- When washing your vehicle, never clean the interior with a water jet.
- When washing your vehicle in an automatic roller-brush car wash, be sure to lock your doors and, depending on version, remove the key.
- Never use high-pressure washing to clean the engine compartment, in order to avoid damaging the electrical units.
- Liquids carried in an open vessel (e.g. a cup or mug) could be spilt, presenting a risk of damage on contact with the controls in the dashboard and centre console. Be careful.

Depending on version, in order to avoid damaging or unpeeling the stickers on the bodywork, you are strongly advised against using high-pressure cleaners to wash your vehicle. It is recommended that you wash it using a high-flow water jet and rinse the vehicle down using demineralised water.
Only a microfibre cloth is recommended for wiping your vehicle; it must be clean and used gently.

It is always preferable to have paint repairs carried out by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Running out of fuel (Diesel)

On vehicles fitted with Diesel engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel.
If the engine does not start first time, do not keep trying, but start the procedure again from the beginning.

i For more information on **Misfuel prevention (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

With 1.6 BlueHDi (Euro 6.1)

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least 5 litres of Diesel.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- ☞ Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Repeat the last two operations 10 times.
- ☞ Operate the starter to start the engine.

With 1.5 BlueHDi (Euro 6.2)

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least 5 litres of Diesel.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- ☞ Wait around 1 minute and switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Operate the starter to start the engine.

If the engine does not start, repeat the procedure.

Other engines

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of diesel.
- ☞ Open the engine bonnet.
- ☞ If necessary, unclip the style cover to access the priming pump.



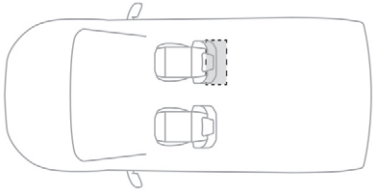
- ☞ Operate the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (there may be resistance on the first press).
- ☞ Operate the starter to start the engine (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- ☞ If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again then start the engine.
- ☞ Put the style cover in place and clip it in.
- ☞ Close the bonnet again.

Tool kit

- ☞ For easier access, move the seat(s) forward.

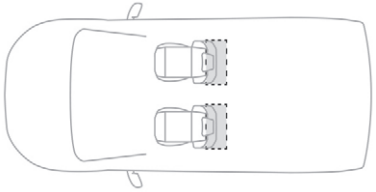
Access to the tools

With temporary puncture repair kit



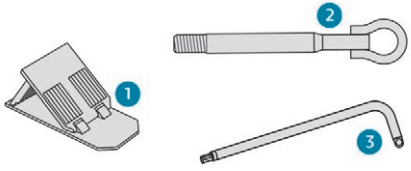
The kit is located under the right-hand front seat.

With spare wheel



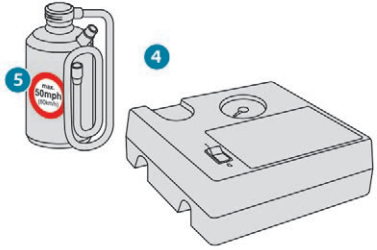
The jack is located under the right-hand front seat.
The tools are located under the left-hand front seat.

Details of the tool kit



1. Chock to immobilise the vehicle.
2. Removable towing eye.
3. Torx key.
   Permits removal of the rear lamps in order to change a bulb.

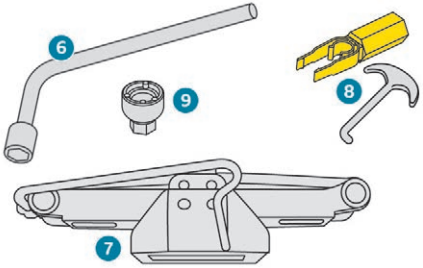
With temporary puncture repair kit



4. Temporary puncture repair kit.
   Contains a 12 V compressor and a cartridge of sealant to temporarily repair the wheel and adjust the tyre pressure.
5. Speed limit sticker.

For more information on the **Temporary puncture repair kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

With a spare wheel



6. Wheelbrace.
   For removing the wheel bolts and raising/lowering the jack.
7. Jack.
   Used to raise the vehicle.
8. Wheel bolt cover/wheel trim removal tools (depending on equipment).
   If present on your vehicle, it removes the wheel bolt covers on alloy wheels or the wheel trim on steel wheels.
9. Socket for the wheel security bolts.
   Serves for adapting the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts.

For more information on the **Spare wheel**, refer to the corresponding section.

All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and may vary depending on equipment.
Do not use them for any other purposes.

The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre.
The jack does not require any maintenance.
The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/CE.

Certain parts of the jack such as the screw thread or the joints could cause injury: avoid touching them.
Carefully remove all traces of lubrication grease.

Temporary puncture repair kit

Scan the QR code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

Comprising a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows the **temporary repair** of a tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.

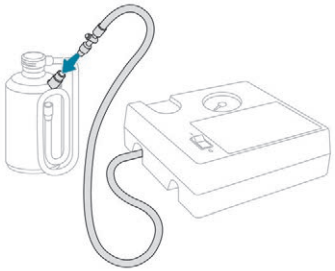
It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.

The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair.

For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

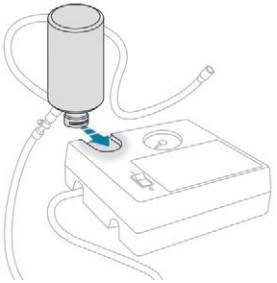
Repair procedure

- Park the vehicle without obstructing any traffic and apply the parking brake.
- Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, wearing high visibility vest, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
- Switch off the ignition.
- Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.

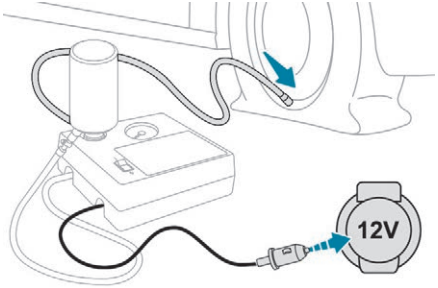


- Connect the pipe from the compressor to the bottle of sealant.

Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.



- Turn the sealant bottle over and secure it in the notch provided on the compressor.
- Remove the valve cap from the tyre to be repaired, and place it in a clean area.



- Connect the hose from the bottle of sealant to the valve of the tyre to be repaired and tighten firmly.
- Check that the compressor switch is at the "**O**" position.

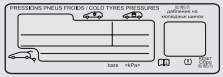
☞ Uncoil fully the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.
☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.

! Only the 12 V socket located at the front of the vehicle can be used.



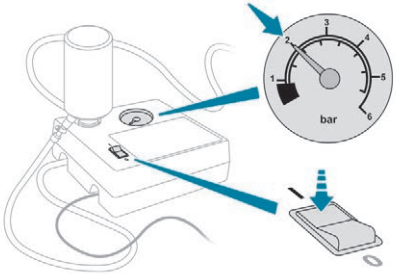
☞ Affix the speed limit sticker.

! The speed limit sticker must be secured to the interior of the vehicle in the driver's field of vision, to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.



The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.

☞ Switch on the ignition.

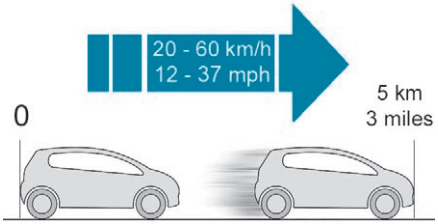


☞ Start the compressor by turning the switch to the "**I**" position until the pressure of the tyre reaches 2.0 bars. The sealant product is injected under pressure into the tyre; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of blowback).

! If a pressure of 2 bars is not reached after about 7 minutes, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

☞ Place the switch in the "**O**" position.
☞ Disconnect the compressor's electric plug from the vehicle's 12 V socket.
☞ Replace the cap on the valve.
☞ Remove the kit.
☞ Remove and then store the bottle of sealant.

! Take care, the sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.
Keep this product out of the reach of children.
The use-by date of the fluid is marked on the bottle.
After use, do not discard the bottle in standard waste, take it to a PEUGEOT dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.
Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



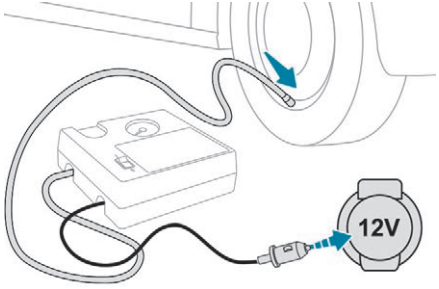
☞ Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.
☞ Stop to check the repair and **measure the tyre pressure** using the kit.

! Do not exceed the speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

Checking/adjusting tyre pressures

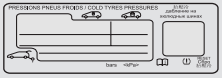
You can also use the compressor, without injecting sealant, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.

- Remove the valve cap from the tyre and place it in a clean area.
- Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.

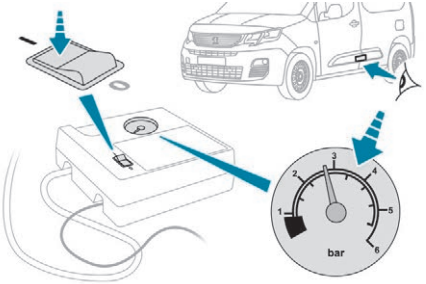


- Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.
- Check that the compressor switch is at the "**O**" position.
- Uncoil fully the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.
- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Switch on the ignition.

Only the 12 V socket located at the front of the vehicle can be used to power the compressor.



The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.



- Start the compressor by placing the switch at position "**I**" and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tyre pressure label. To deflate: press the black button located on the compressor pipe, near the valve connection.

If a pressure of 2 bars is not reached after 7 minutes, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch to the "**O**" position.
- Remove the kit then stow it.

Do not drive more than 125 miles (200 km) with the repaired tyre; see a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to change the tyre.

Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system.
For more information on **Tyre under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Spare wheel

Scan the QR code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

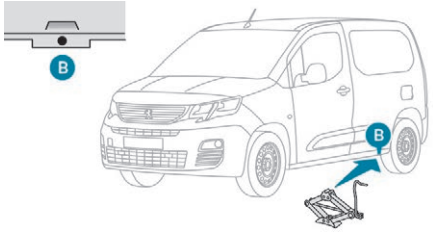
Procedure for changing a damaged wheel with the spare wheel using the tools provided with the vehicle.

For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

- Park the vehicle without obstructing any traffic and apply the parking brake.
- Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, wearing high visibility vest, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
- Switch off the ignition.

Access to the spare wheel

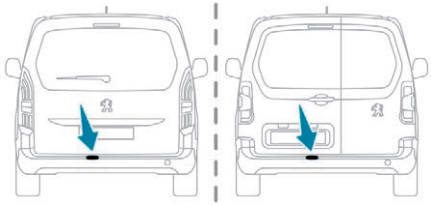
- Access to the spare wheel is from the rear.



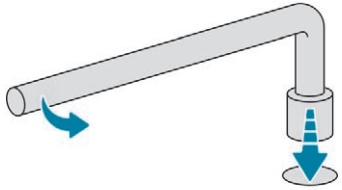
- If your vehicle is fitted with a towbar, raise the rear of the vehicle using the jack (must be at jacking point **B**) to allow sufficient space to remove the spare wheel.

Remove the spare wheel from the carrier

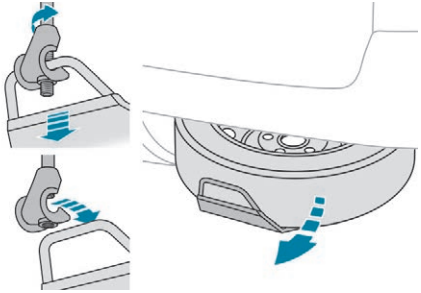
- Depending on version, open the tailgate or the hinged doors.



- Access the carrier bolt, located on the rear door sill.

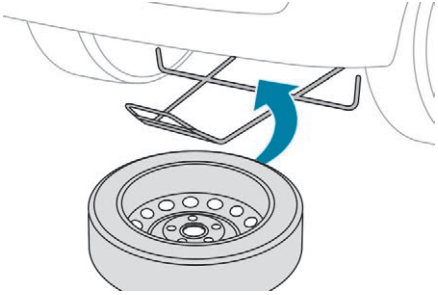


- Slacken the bolt using the wheelbrace until the carrier is low enough to allow the carrier hook to be disengaged.



- Release the carrier from the hook, take the spare wheel and place it next to the wheel to be changed.

Refit the spare wheel in the carrier

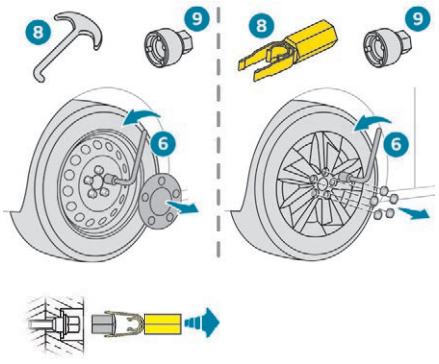


- Position the wheel facing the carrier.
- Progressively return the wheel to the carrier by pushing alternately at left and right until it is clear of the hook fixing area.

☞ Engage the carrier on the hook, then tighten the bolt using the wheelbrace until the carrier is fully home and the bolt is completely tight.

Removing a wheel

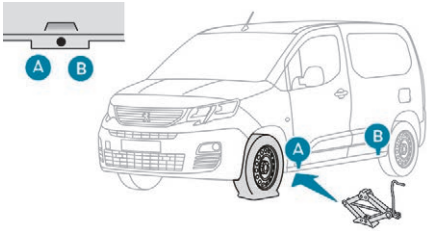
Parking the vehicle
Immobilise the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery.
With a manual gearbox, engage first gear then switch off the ignition to block the wheels.
With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector in position **P** then switch off the ignition to block the wheels.
Apply the parking brake and check that the warning lamp is on in the instrument panel.
The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.
Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.
With an automatic electronic parking brake, place a chock against the wheel diagonally opposite to the one being replaced.



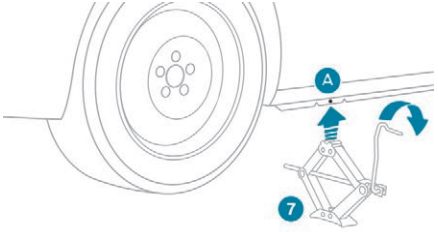
☞ With a steel wheel, remove the trim using tool **8**.
☞ With an alloy wheel, remove the cap from each of the bolts using tool **8**.
☞ If your vehicle is so equipped, fit security bolt socket **9** to wheelbrace **6** to slacken the security bolt.
☞ **Slacken** (without removing) the other wheel bolts using just wheelbrace **6**.

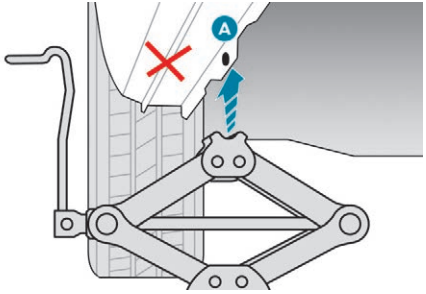
Wheel with wheel trim
When removing the wheel, first remove the wheel trim by pulling at the valve aperture using the wheelbrace.

! Do not use:
- the jack for any other purpose than lifting the vehicle,
- a jack other than the one supplied by the manufacturer.



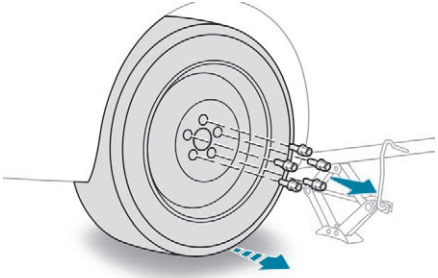
☞ Place the foot of the jack on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the **A** or **B** jacking point provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.





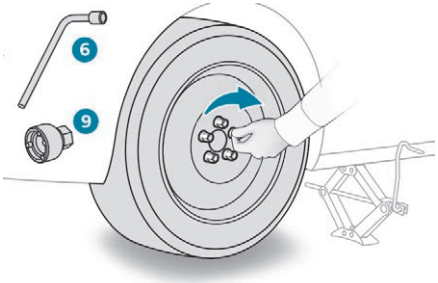
- Extend jack **7** until its head comes into contact with jacking point **A** or **B**, whichever is used; the contact surface **A** or **B** of the vehicle must be correctly engaged with the central part of the head of the jack.
- Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.

! Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or drop – risk of injury!
Take care to place the jack only at the jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, ensuring that the contact point of the vehicle is centred on the jack head.
Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or the jack dropping – risk of injury!
It is prohibited to lie down on the ground to position yourself underneath the vehicle.

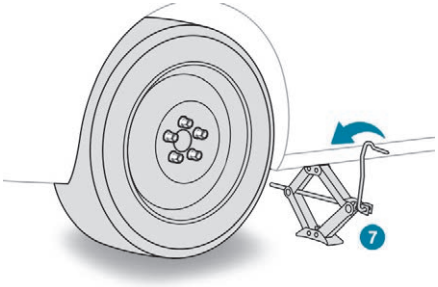


- Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
- Remove the wheel.

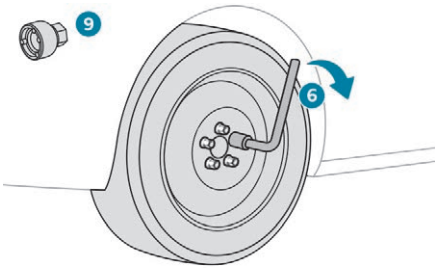
Fitting a wheel



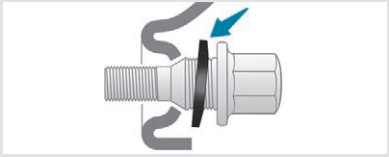
- Put the wheel in place on the hub.
- Screw in the bolts by hand as far as possible.
- Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **6** fitted with security socket **9**.
- Pre-tighten the other bolts using wheelbrace **6** only.



- Lower the vehicle again fully.
- Fold jack **7** and detach it.



- If your vehicle is so equipped, tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **6** fitted with security socket **9**.
- Tighten the other bolts using wheelbrace **6** only.
- Store the tools.



Fitting a steel or "space-saver" spare wheel

If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, when tightening the bolts on fitting it is normal to notice that the washers do not come into contact with the steel or "space-saver" spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.

After changing a wheel

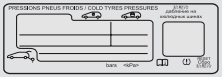
Stow the punctured wheel in the carrier.
Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
Have the punctured tyre examined. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

Some driving aid functions should be disabled, e.g. the Active Safety Brake.

If your vehicle has tyre under-inflation detection, check the tyre pressures and reinitialise the system.
For more information on **Under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Wheel with wheel trim

When refitting the wheel, refit the wheel trim starting by placing its notch facing the valve and press around its edge with the palm of your hand.



The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.

Changing a bulb

The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:

- **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
- use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
- when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

Changing a bulb should only be done after the headlamp has been switched off for several minutes (risk of serious burns).

- Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.

It is essential only to use anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs, so as not to damage the headlamp.
Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

Halogen bulbs
To ensure good quality lighting, check that the bulb is correctly positioned in its housing.



Opening the bonnet/Access to bulbs
With the engine warm, proceed with caution – risk of burns!
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan – risk of strangulation!

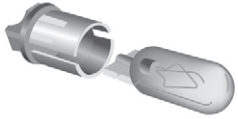
After changing a bulb
When refitting, close the protective cover very carefully to guarantee the sealing of the lamp.

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

Types of bulb

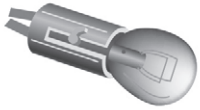
Various types of bulb are fitted to your vehicle. To remove them:

Type A



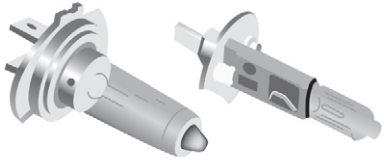
All glass bulb: pull gently as it is fitted by pressure.

Type B



Bayonet bulb: press on the bulb then turn it anti-clockwise.

Type C



Halogen bulb: release the retaining spring from its housing.

Type D



Halogen bulb: turn the bulb anti-clockwise.

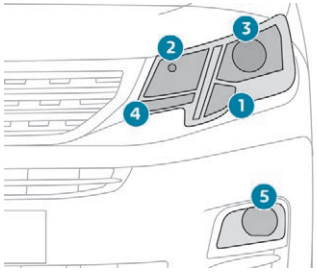
Halogen bulbs must be changed with headlamp off and cold (risk of severe burns). Do not touch the bulb directly, use a lint-free cloth.

When each operation has been completed, check the operation of the lighting.

Front lamps

For more information on **Changing a bulb** and, in particular, the types of bulb, refer to the corresponding section.

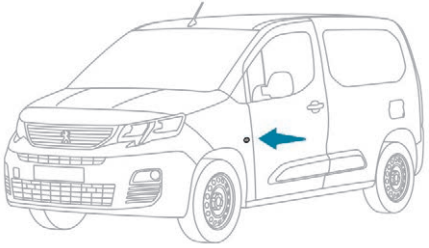
Model A



1. Sidelamps/daytime running lamps.
   Type A, W21/5W or LED (depending on version)
2. Main beam headlamps.
   Type C, H1
3. Dipped beam headlamps.
   Type C, H7
4. Direction indicator.
   Type B, PY21W
5. Foglamp.
   Type D, H11

Direction indicator side repeater

Type A, WY5W-5W (amber)

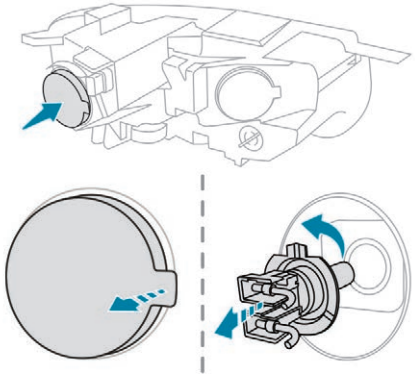


- Push the repeater towards the rear and disengage it.
- When refitting, engage the repeater towards the front and then bring it towards the rear.

Amber coloured bulbs (direction indicators and side repeaters) must be replaced with bulbs of identical specification and colour.

Dipped beam headlamps

Type C, H7



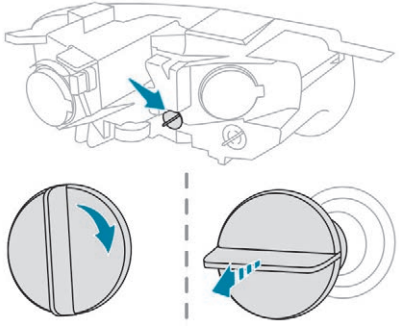
- ☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling on the tab.
- ☞ Turn the unit in relation to the support.
- ☞ Pull the bulb connector.
- ☞ Remove the bulb and replace it.

To refit the lamp, carry out these operations in reverse order.

i Be sure to refit the protection cover keeping the tab accessible.

Sidelamps/Daytime running lamps

Type A, W21/5W

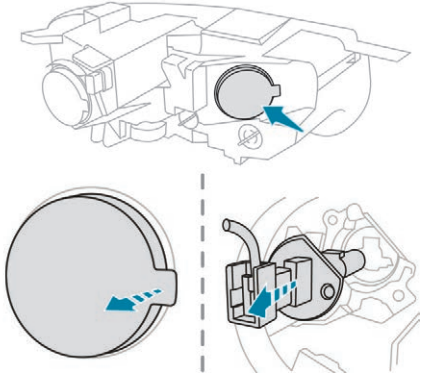


- Turn the connector a quarter turn clockwise.
- Pull the bulb connector.
- Remove the bulb and replace it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Main beam headlamps

Type C, H1



- Remove the protective cover by pulling on the tab.
- Unclip the unit in relation to the support.
- Pull the bulb connector.
- Remove the bulb and replace it.

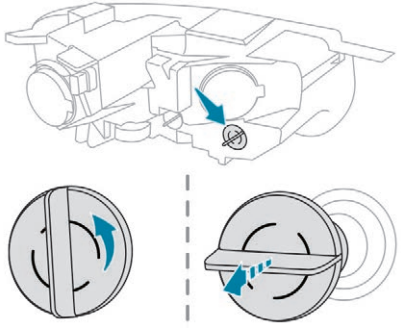
To refit the lamp, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Be sure to refit the protection cover keeping the tab accessible.

Direction indicators

Type B, PY21W

Rapid flashing of the direction indicator lamp (left or right) indicates that one of the bulbs on the corresponding side has failed.

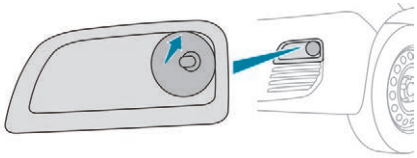


- Turn the connector a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
- Pull the unit in relation to the support.
- Remove the bulb and replace it.

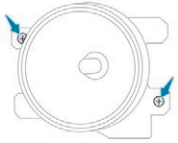
To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Front foglamps

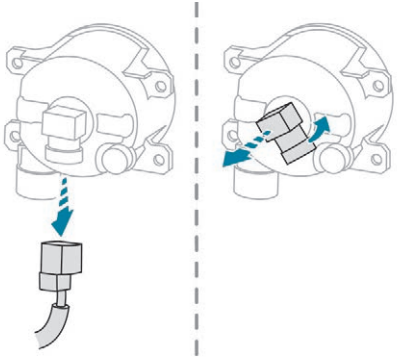
Type D, H11



☞ Insert a flat screwdriver between the lamp and the cover.
☞ Pull and lever to unclip the cover.



☞ Remove the two fastening screws of the module.
☞ Remove the module from its housing.



☞ Press the locking clip and disconnect the connector.
☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
☞ Remove the bulb holder.
☞ Replace the faulty bulb.

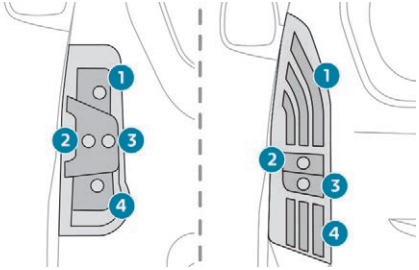
To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

> **i** To replace this type of bulb, you can also contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

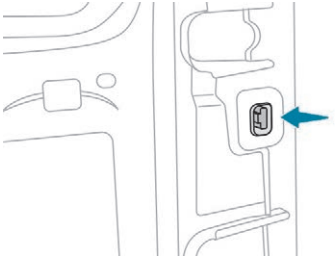
Rear lamps

For more information on **Changing a bulb** and, in particular, the types of bulb, refer to the corresponding section.

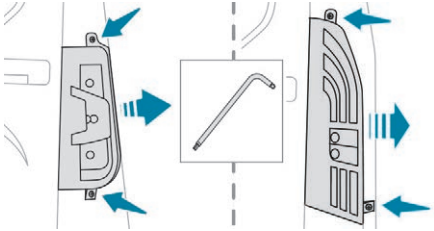
With side-hinged doors/tailgate



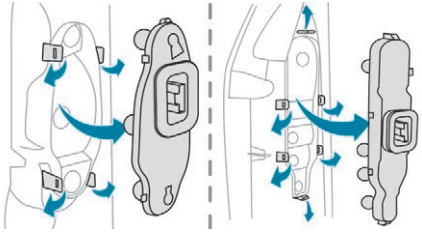
1. Brake lamps/sidelamps.
   Type B, P21/5W
2. Direction indicators.
   Type B, PY21W (amber)
3. Reversing lamps.
   Type B, P21W
4. Foglamps.
   Type B, P21W



☞ From the inside, disconnect the electrical connector at the rear of the lamps.



- Remove the two fixing bolts using the Torx key provided in your vehicle.
  For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.
- From the outside, pull the whole lamp unit towards you (with **side-hinged doors**) or towards the centre of the vehicle (with **tailgate**).



- Move aside the tabs, then extract the bulb holder.
- Remove the faulty bulb by pressing lightly on it, then turning it a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
- Change the bulb.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

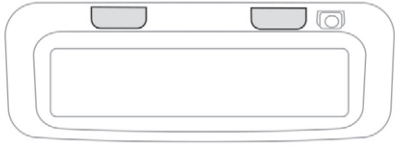
> Take care to reposition the tabs and the supply wire correctly to avoid trapping the wire.

> After changing a rear direction indicator bulb, the reinitialisation time is approximately 2 minutes or more.

Number plate lamps

Type A, W5W -5W

With side-hinged doors



- Unclip the interior trim.
- Disconnect the connector by moving aside its tab.
- Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
- Change the bulb.
- Put the bulb holder back in place and reconnect the connector.
- Put the trim back in place.

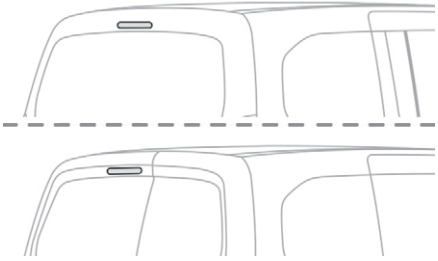
With tailgate



- Remove the plastic lens using a screwdriver.
- Change the bulb.
- Refit the plastic lens and press on it.

Third brake lamp

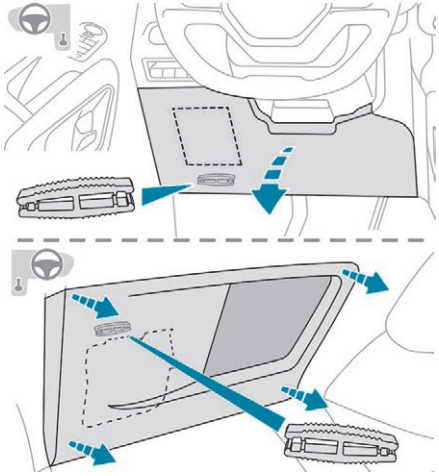
Type A, W16W -16W



- Unscrew the two nuts.
- Push the pins.
- If necessary, disconnect the connector to remove the lamp.
- Change the bulb.

Changing a fuse

Access to the tool kit



The extraction tweezers are located behind the fusebox cover.

- ☞ Unclip the cover by pulling at the top left, then right.
- ☞ Disengage the cover completely and turn it over,
- ☞ Take the tweezers from their housing.

Changing a fuse

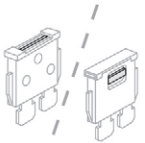
Before changing a fuse:

- ☞ the cause of the failure must be identified and rectified,
- ☞ all electrical consumers must be switched off,
- ☞ the vehicle must be immobilised with the ignition off,
- ☞ identify the faulty fuse using the existing allocation tables and diagrams.

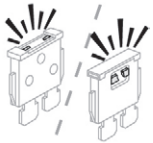
To remove or fit a fuse, it is essential to:

- ☞ use the special tweezers to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament.
- ☞ always replace the failed fuse with a fuse of the same rating (same colour); using a different rating could cause faults (risk of fire).

If the fault recurs after replacing a fuse, have the electrical system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



Good



Failed



Tweezers

! Replacement with a fuse not shown in the allocation tables below may cause a serious malfunction of your vehicle. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i **Installing electrical accessories**
Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.
Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! PEUGEOT will not accept responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by PEUGEOT and not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular when the combined consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

For more information on installing a towbar or equipment of the TAXI type, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

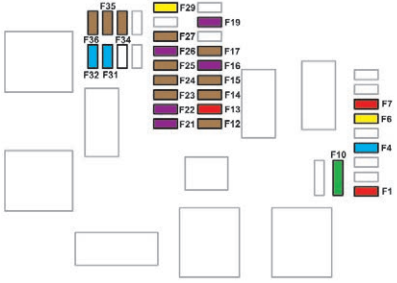
Dashboard fuses

The fusebox is placed in the lower dashboard (left-hand side).

Access to the fuses

☞ Unclip the cover by pulling at the top left, then right.

The fuses described below vary according to the equipment in your vehicle.

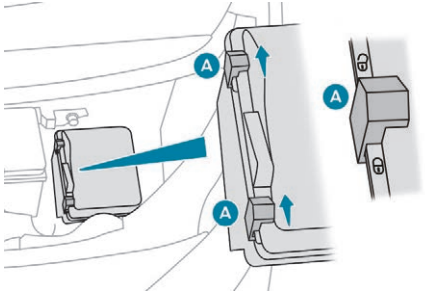


Fuse No.	Rating (A)	Functions
F1	**10**	Wireless smartphone charger, electrochrome interior mirror.
F4	**15**	Horn.
F6	**20**	Screenwash pump.
F7	**10**	12 V socket (rear).
F10	**30**	Electric locks module.
F13	**10**	Telematics and radio controls.
F14	**5**	Alarm, overload indicator, advanced telematic unit.
F19	**3**	Trailer interface unit.
F22	**3**	Surround Rear Vision display screen.
F23	**5**	Generic trailer interface unit.
F27	**5**	Additional heating.
F29	**20**	Audio system, touch screen.
F32	**15**	12 V socket (front).
F34	**5**	Mirrors control.
F36	**5**	USB port.

Engine compartment fuses

The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment near the battery.

Access to the fuses



- Release the two latches **A**.
- Remove the cover.
- Change the fuse.
- When you have finished, close the cover carefully then engage the two latches **A**, to ensure correct sealing of the fusebox.



Fuse No.	Rating (A)	Functions
F16	15	Front foglamp.
F18	10	Right-hand main beam headlamp.
F19	10	Left-hand main beam headlamp.
F29	40	Windscreen wipers.

12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.

Lead-acid starter batteries

Batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead.
They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.
Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

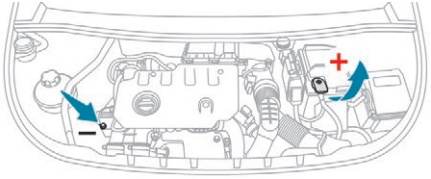
Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.
All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire.
Wash your hands afterwards.

Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification.
Its replacement should be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Access to the battery

The battery is located under the bonnet.

- ☞ Open the bonnet using the interior release lever, then the exterior safety catch.
- ☞ Secure the bonnet stay.



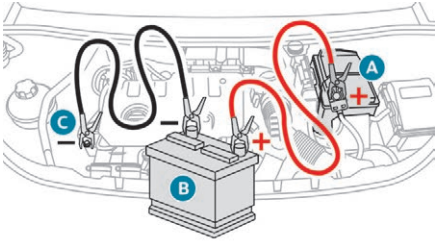
The battery (-) terminal is not accessible.
A remote earth point is provided at the front of the vehicle.

ℹ For more information on the **Bonnet** and the **Engine**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is flat, the engine can be started using a backup battery (external or from another vehicle) and jump leads or a battery booster.

❗ Never try to start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.
First check that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.
The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.
Switch off all the electrical consumers on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
Make sure that the jump leads are not close to moving parts of the engine (fan, belts, etc.).
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.



- ☞ Connect the red cable to the (+) terminal of flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow), then to the (+) terminal of backup battery **B** or the booster.
- ☞ Connect one end of the green or black cable to the (-) terminal of backup battery **B** or the booster (or an earth point on the other vehicle).
- ☞ Connect the other end of the green or black cable to earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.
- ☞ Start the engine of the vehicle with the good battery and leave it running for a few minutes.
- ☞ Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.

If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.

- ☞ Wait for it to return to idle.
- ☞ Disconnect the jump lead cables **in reverse order**.
- ☞ Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, by driving or with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

ℹ Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.
In some circumstances it may be necessary to charge the battery:

- if you only use your vehicle for short journeys,
- if the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

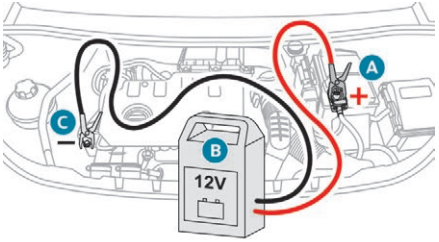
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! If you plan to charge your vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

! Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
Never reverse polarities.

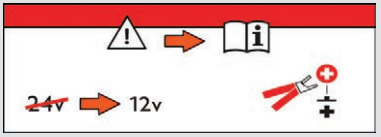
i It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

☞ Switch off the ignition.
☞ Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lamps, wipers, etc.).



☞ Switch off the charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
☞ Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
☞ Raise the plastic cover, if your vehicle has one, on the (+) terminal.
☞ Connect the cables of charger **B** as follows:
- the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery **A**,
- the negative (-) black cable to earth point **C** on the vehicle.

☞ At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from battery **A**.

!


If this label is present, it is essential to use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components related to the Stop & Start system.

! Never try to charge a frozen battery – risk of explosion!
If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or by a qualified workshop who will check that the internal components have not been damaged and that the container has not cracked, which would mean a risk of toxic and corrosive acid leaking.

Disconnecting the battery

In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, it is recommended that the battery be disconnected if the vehicle is taken out of service for a long period.
Before disconnecting the battery:

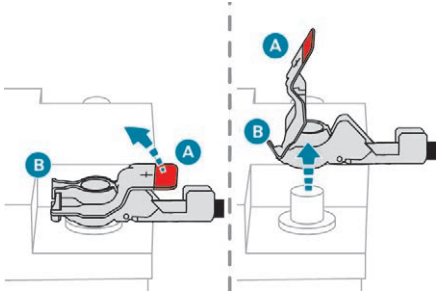
☞ close the windows and the doors before disconnecting the battery,

☞ switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
☞ switch off the ignition and wait for four minutes.

At the battery, detach the (+) terminal only.

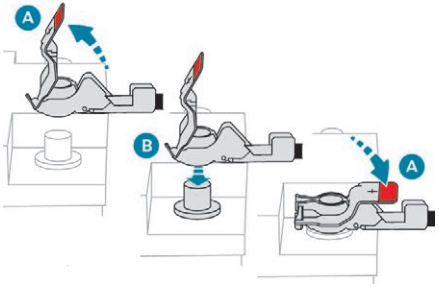
Quick-release terminal clamp

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



☞ Raise the lever **A** fully to release the clamp **B**.
☞ Remove the clamp **B** by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



☞ Raise the lever **A** fully.
☞ Replace the open clamp **B** on the **(+)** terminal.
☞ Push the clamp **B** fully down.
☞ Lower the lever **A** to lock the clamp **B**.

! Do not force the lever as locking will be impossible if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

Following reconnection of the battery

Following reconnection of the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, in order to enable the electronic systems to initialise.
However, if minor problems persist following this operation, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Referring to the corresponding section, you must reset certain systems yourself, such as:
- the remote control or electronic key (depending on version),
- the electric windows,
- the electric doors,
- the date and time,
- the radio preset stations.

i The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.
In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Towing

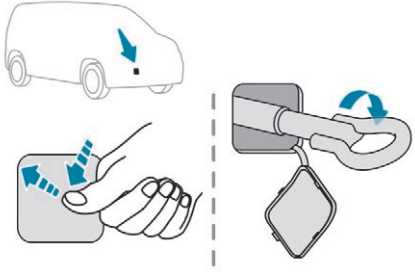
Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable mechanical device.

Access to the eye

i For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

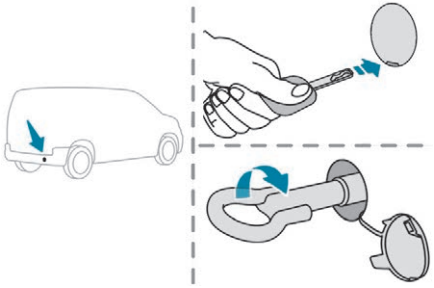
! With a manual gearbox, move the gear lever into neutral.
With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector into position **N**.
Failure to adhere to this instruction may lead to damage to braking system components and the lack of braking assistance on restarting the engine.

Towing your vehicle



- In the front bumper, slide a finger from the centre of the cover plate to the upper corner (as shown above) to unclip it.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towbar.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.
- Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

Towing another vehicle

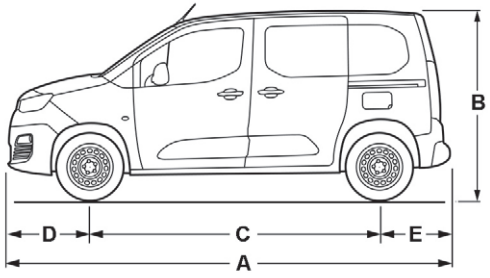


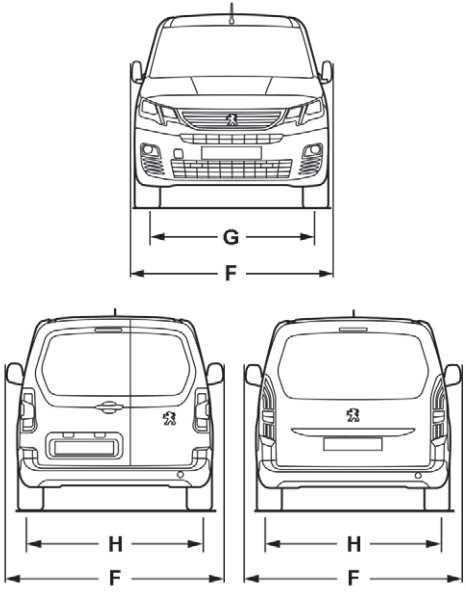
- In the rear bumper, place the key in the notch located under the flap.
- Turn the key and then open the flap.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towbar.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.
- Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

! **General recommendations**
Observe the legislation in force in your country.
Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.
The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.
When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towbar; rope and straps are prohibited.
The towing vehicle must move off gently.
When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.
In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:
- vehicle broken down on a motorway or main road,
- four-wheel drive vehicle,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towbar available.

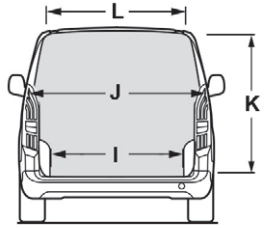
Dimensions (mm)

These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.
Your vehicle is available in two lengths (Standard et Long).
The values may vary depending on wheel diameters, load, engine, etc.

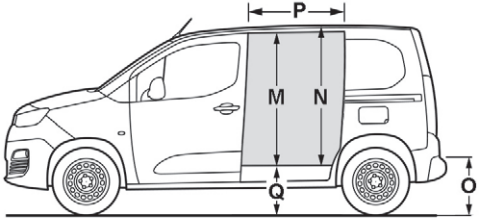




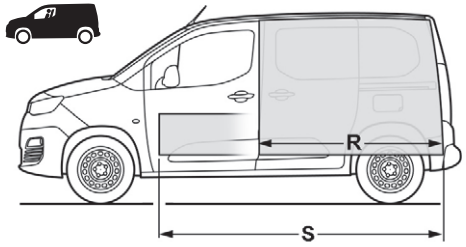
			Vehicle length	
			Standard (L1)	Long (L2)
A	Overall length		4,403	4,753
B	Overall height	Standard version	1,796 to 1,825	1,812 to 1,820
		Worksite version	1,840 to 1,860	1,849 to 1,860
C	Wheelbase		2,785	2,975
D	Front overhang		892	
E	Rear overhang		726	886
F	Width with mirrors	Folded	1,921	
		Unfolded	2,107	
G	Front track width		1,553 to 1,562	1,553
H	Rear track width		1,568 to 1,577	1,549 to 1,568



			Vehicle length	
			Standard (L1)	Long (L2)
I	Interior width between wheel arches		1,229	
J	Maximum interior width	Without sliding side door	1,733	
		With 1 sliding side door	1,630	
		With 2 sliding side doors	1,527	
K	Useable height of the opening	With side-hinged doors	1,137	
		With tailgate	1,197	
L	Useable width of the opening		1,242	



			Vehicle length	
			Standard (L1)	Long (L2)
M	Useable height of the opening		1,072	
N	Interior load height (varies depending on the angle of the floor and the curve of the roof)		1,200 to 1,270	
O	Loading sill height	Standard version	548 to 588	X
		Standard version with increased payload	568 to 578	561 to 565
		Commercial vehicle version	602 to 610	605 to 610
P	Useable width of the opening	Without Multi-Flex bench seat	675	
		With Multi-Flex bench seat	641	
Q	Loading sill height	Standard version	534 to 558	
		Standard version with increased payload	551 to 558	543 to 552
		Commercial vehicle version	574 to 581	575 to 587



			Vehicle length	
			Standard (L1)	Long (L2)
R	Length of interior floor	With Multi-Flex bench seat	1,817	2,167
		With ladder	1,790	2,140
S	Maximum loading length (protective cover in place)		3,090	3,440

Engine technical data and towed loads

Engines

The engine characteristics are given in the vehicle's registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating to your vehicle are indicated on the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

These values are also indicated on the manufacturer's plate or label.

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

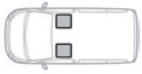
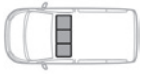
The GTW (Gross Train Weight) and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towed load value must be reduced by 10% for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.
The maximum authorised nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towball.

When exterior temperatures are high, the vehicle performance may be limited in order to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, limit the towed weight.

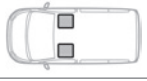
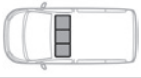
Towing even with a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect its road holding. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.
When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of 62 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

If the exterior temperature is high, it is recommended that the engine is allowed to idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to facilitate its cooling.

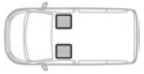
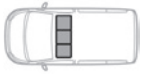
Engines and towed loads – PETROL

Engine		VTi 115 BVM5		
Gearbox		Manual 5-speed		
Code		EC5F BE		
Length		Standard (L1)	Standard (L1) (increased payload)	Long (L2)
Model code	2 seats 			
	3 seats 			
Cubic capacity (cm^3)		1,587		
Max. power: EC standard (kW)		85		
Fuel		Unleaded		
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12 % slope (kg)	2-3 seats	1,000	1,000	1,000
Unbraked trailer (kg)	2-3 seats	680	690	720
Maximum authorised nose/towball weight (kg)	2-3 seats	74	74	74

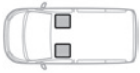
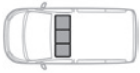
Engines and towed loads – PETROL EURO 6.2

Engine		PureTech 110 S&S BVM6	PureTech 130 S&S EAT8		
Gearbox		Manual 6-speed	Automatic 8-speed		
Code		EB2ADT MB6 STTD – TBC	EB2ADTS ATN8 STTD		
Length		Standard (L1)	Standard (L1)	Standard (L1) (increased payload)	Long (L2)
Model code	2 seats 	EUHNPJ-G			
	3 seats 	EUHNPJ-H			
Cubic capacity (cm^3)		1,199	1,199		
Max. power: EC standard (kW)		81	96		
Fuel		Unleaded	Unleaded		
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)	2-3 seats	1,200	1,300	900	1,150
Unbraked trailer (kg)	2-3 seats	680	690	690	720
Maximum authorised nose/towball weight (kg)	2-3 seats	74	74	74	74

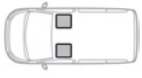
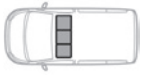
Engines and towed loads – DIESEL

Engine		HDi 75 BVM5		HDi 92 S&S BVM5		
Gearbox		Manual 5-speed		Manual 5-speed		
Code		DV6E BE		DV6D BE		
Length		Standard (L1)	Standard (L1) (increased payload)	Standard (L1)	Standard (L1) (increased payload)	Long (L2)
Model code	2 seats 					
	3 seats 					
Cubic capacity (cm^3)		1,560		1,560		
Max. power: EC standard (kW)		55		68		
Fuel		Diesel		Diesel		
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)	2-3 seats	1,100	750	1,250	850	850
Unbraked trailer (kg)	2-3 seats	680	690	680	690	720
Maximum authorised nose/towball weight (kg)	2-3 seats	74	74	74	74	74

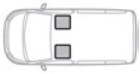
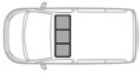
Engines and towed loads – DIESEL EURO 6.1

Engine		BlueHDi 75 BVM5		BlueHDi 100 S&S BVM5		
Gearbox		Manual 5-speed		Manual 5-speed		
Code		DV6FE BE		DV6FD BE STTD		
Length		Standard (L1)	Standard (L1) (increased payload)	Standard (L1)	Standard (L1) (increased payload)	Long (L2)
Model code	2 seats 	EFBHWB-G		EFBHYB-G		EFBHYB-J
	3 seats 	EFBHWB-H		EFBHYB-H		EFBHYB-K
Cubic capacity (cm^3)		1,560		1,560		
Max. power: EC standard (kW)		55		73		
Fuel		Diesel		Diesel		
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)	2-3 seats	1,000	750	1,200	1,000	950
Unbraked trailer (kg)	2-3 seats	680	690	690	690	730
Maximum authorised nose/towball weight (kg)	2-3 seats	74	74	74	74	74

Engines and towed loads – DIESEL EURO 6.2

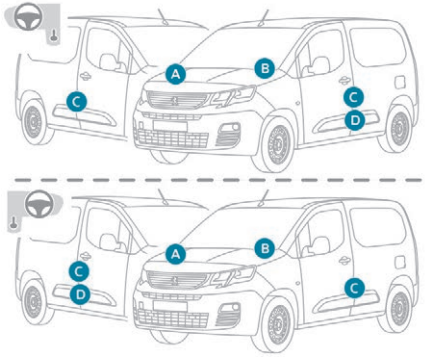
Engine		BlueHDi 75 BVM5	BlueHDi 100 S&S BVM5	BlueHDi 100 BVM5		
Gearbox		**Manual 5-speed**	**Manual 5-speed**	**Manual 5-speed**		
Code		DV5RE BE	DV5RD BE STTD – TBC	DV5RD BE		
Length		Standard (L1)	Standard (L1)	Standard (L1)	Standard (L1) (increased payload)	Long (L2)
Model code	**2 seats** 	EFYHWC-G	EFYHYC-G	EFYHYC-G		EFYHYC-J
	3 seats 	EFYHWC-H	EFYHYC-H	EFYHYC-H		EFYHYC-K
Cubic capacity (cm^3)		1,499	1,499	1,499		
Max. power: EC standard (kW)		55	75	75		
Fuel		Diesel	Diesel	Diesel		
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)	**2-3 seats**	1,100	1,350	1,350	1,000	1,000
Unbraked trailer (kg)	**2-3 seats**	690	690	690	700	730
Maximum authorised nose/towball weight (kg)	**2-3 seats**	74	74	74	74	74

Engines and towed loads – DIESEL EURO 6.2

Engine		BlueHDi 130 S&S BVM6			BlueHDi 130 S&S EAT8		
Gearbox		Manual 6-speed			Automatic 8-speed		
Code		DV5RC ML6 STTD			DV5RC ATN8 STTD		
Length		Standard (L1)	Standard (L1) (increased payload)	Long (L2)	Standard (L1)	Standard (L1) (increased payload)	Long (L2)
Model code	2 seats 	EFYHZJ-G		EFYHZJ-J	EFYHZR-G		EFYHZR-J
	3 seats 	EFYHZJ-H		EFYHZJ-K	EFYHZR-H		EFYHZR-K
Cubic capacity (cm^3)		1,499			1,499		
Max. power: EC standard (kW)		96			96		
Fuel		Diesel			Diesel		
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12% slope (kg)	2-3 seats	1,500	1,200	1,200	1,350	1,000	1,150
Unbraked trailer (kg)	2-3 seats	710	720	740	720	720	750
Maximum authorised nose/towball weight (kg)	2-3 seats	74	74	74	74	74	74

Identification markings

Different visible markings for the identification and localisation of your vehicle.

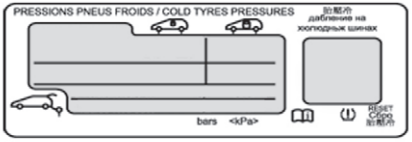


A. Vehicle identification number (VIN), under the bonnet.
This number is engraved on the chassis near the right-hand front wheel arch.

B. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) on the windscreen lower cross member.
This number is recorded on a label, visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.
This self-destroying label on the middle door pillar, right or left-hand side, contains the following information:
- the name of the manufacturer,
- the European Whole Vehicle Type Approval number,
- the vehicle identification number (VIN),
- the maximum authorised weight (gross vehicle weight),
- the maximum authorised weight with trailer (gross train weight),
- the maximum weight on the front axle,
- the maximum weight on the rear axle.

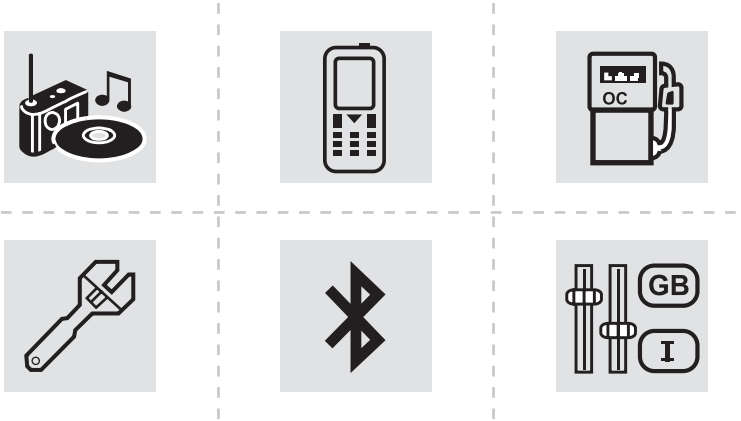
D. Tyre/paint label.



This label on the middle door pillar, driver's side, contains the following information:
- the tyre pressures, unladen and laden,
- the tyre sizes (including the load index and speed rating),
- the spare tyre inflation pressure,
- the paint colour code.

The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated on the label, without affecting inflation pressure.

Bluetooth® audio system



Contents

First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	2
Menus	4
Radio	4
DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)	6
Media	7
Telephone	10
Frequently asked questions	14

The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Your audio system is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. All work on the system must be carried out exclusively by a dealer or qualified workshop, to avoid any risk of electrocution, fire or mechanical faults.

To avoid discharging the battery, the audio system may switch off after a few minutes if the engine is not running.

First steps

Press: On/Off.
Rotate: adjust volume.

SRC / Short press: change audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming).
Long press: display the **Telephone** menu (if a telephone is connected).

Adjust audio settings:
Front/rear fader; left/right balance; bass/treble; loudness; audio ambience.
Activation/Deactivation of automatic volume adjustment (linked to the speed of the vehicle).

LIST **Radio:**
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.

Select the screen display mode, between:
Date; Audio functions; Trip computer; Telephone.

OK Confirm or display contextual menu.

1 Buttons 1 to 6.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: preset a radio station.

Radio:
Automatic step by step search up/down for radio stations.
Media:
Select previous/next CD, USB, streaming track.
Scroll in a list.

Radio:
Manual step by step search up/down for radio stations.
Select previous/next MP3 folder.
Media:
Select previous/next folder/genre/artist/playlist on the USB device.
Scroll in a list.

Abandon the current operation.
Go up one level (menu or folder).

MENU Access to the main menu.

TA Activate/Deactivate TA function (traffic announcements).
Long press: select type of announcement.

BAND Selection of FM/DAB/AM wavebands.

Steering mounted controls

Steering mounted controls – Type 1



Radio:
Select the previous/next preset radio station.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select the previous/next track.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

LIST

Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.

SRC /

Other than telephone call:
Short press: change audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming), confirmation if the "**Telephone**" menu is open.
Long press: open the "**Telephone**" menu.
In the event of a telephone call:
Short press: accept the call.
Long press: reject the call.
During a telephone call:
Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.
Long press: end the call.

OK Confirm a selection.


Increase volume.


Decrease volume.


Mute/Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls – Type 2



MENU Access to the main menu.

+ Increase volume.

Mute/Restore the sound.

– Decrease volume.

SRC /

Other than telephone call:
Short press: change audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming), confirmation if the "**Telephone**" menu is open.
Long press: open the "**Telephone**" menu.
In the event of a telephone call:
Short press: accept the call.
Long press: reject the call.
During a telephone call:
Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.
Long press: end the call.

Start voice recognition on your smartphone via the system.

LIST

Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.

Radio:
Select the previous/next preset radio station.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select the previous/next track.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.
Press the thumbwheel: confirm.

Menus

Depending on version.

"**Multimedia**": Media settings, Radio settings.

"**Telephone**": Call, Directory management, Telephone management, Hang up.

"**Trip computer**".

"**Maintenance**": Diagnosis, Warning log, etc.

"**Connections**": Manage connections, search for devices.

"**Personalisation-configuration**": Define the vehicle parameters, Choice of language, Display configuration, Choice of units, Date and time adjustment.

MENU Press the "**MENU**" button.

Move from one menu to another.

OK Enter a menu.

Radio

Selecting a station

SRC Press the **SOURCE** button repeatedly and select the radio.

BAND Press this button to select a waveband (FM/AM/DAB).

Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search up/down for radio frequencies.

LIST Press this button to display the list of stations received locally.
To update this list, press for more than two seconds. The sound is cut while updating.

RDS

The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

If RDS is not available, the RDS symbol appears struck out in the screen.

The RDS, if activated, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Short procedure

In "**Radio**" mode, press the **OK** button to activate or deactivate RDS directly.

Long procedure

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

◀◀ ▶▶ Select "**Audio functions**".

OK Press **OK**.

◀◀ ▶▶ Select the "**FM waveband preferences**" function.

OK Press **OK**.

◀◀ ▶▶ Select "**Frequency tracking (RDS)**".

OK Press **OK**, RDS is displayed on the screen.

Playing TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages.
To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, etc.) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

Take care when increasing the volume while listening to TA messages. The volume may prove too high on return to the original audio source.

TA Press the **TA** button to activate or deactivate traffic messages.

Receiving INFO messages

The INFO function gives priority to TA alert messages. To be active, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. When a message is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, etc.) is interrupted automatically to receive the INFO message. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

TA Make a long press on this button to display the list of categories.

▲ ▼ Select or deselect categories.

OK Activate or deactivate the reception of the corresponding messages.

Displaying TEXT INFOS

Radio text is information transmitted by the radio station related to the station's current programme or song.

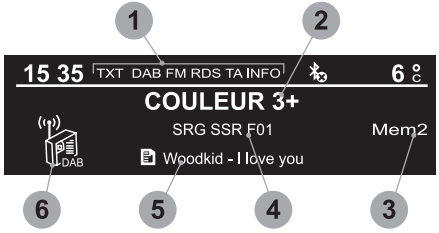
OK When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

▲ ▼ Select "**RadioText (TXT) display**" and confirm **OK** to save.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Depending on version

If the current DAB radio station is not available on FM, "DAB FM" is struck out.



1 Options display: if active but not available, the display will be struck out.

2 Display of the name of the current station.

3 Preset station, buttons 1 to 6.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: memorise a radio station.

4 Display of the name of the "multiplex" service being used, also called "ensemble".

5 RadioText (TXT) display for the current radio station.

6 Represents the signal strength for the band being listened to.

When changing region, an update of the list of preset radio stations is advisable.



LIST Display of the list of all radio stations and "multiplexes".

Terrestrial digital radio

Digital radio provides a superior audio quality and also additional categories of traffic announcements (TA INFO).
The different "multiplex/ensemble" services offer a choice of radio stations in alphabetical order.

BAND Change of band (FM1, FM2, DAB, etc.)

◀◀ ▶▶ Change of station within the same "multiplex/ensemble".

▲ ▼ Starting of a search for the previous/next "multiplex/ensemble".

TA Long press: selection of the categories of news desired among Transport, News, Entertainment and Special Flash (available depending on the station).

When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press "**OK**" to display the contextual menu.
(Frequency search (RDS), DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display, Information on the station, etc.)

DAB/FM station tracking

"DAB" does not have 100% coverage of the country.
When the digital signal is weak, "DAB / FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding analogue FM station (if it exists).
When the "DAB / FM auto tracking" is active, the DAB station will be selected automatically.

If "DAB / FM auto tracking" tracking is enabled, there is a lag of a few seconds when the system switches to the analogue FM station sometimes with a change in volume.

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

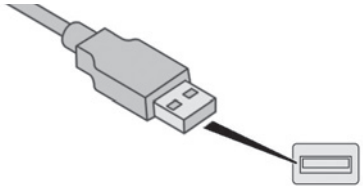
Select "**Multimedia**" and confirm.

Select "**DAB / FM auto tracking**" and confirm.

If the "DAB" station you are listening to is not available on FM ("**DAB/FM**" option struck out), or if "DAB / FM auto tracking" is not on, the sound will be cut when the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
The system changes automatically to "USB" source.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

Any additional equipment connected to the system must conform to the standard of the product or standard IEC 60950-1.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
Playlists are updated every time a new USB memory stick is connected.

When the USB port is used, the portable device charges automatically.

Play mode

The play modes available are:

- **Normal**: the tracks are played in order, depending on the classification of the selected files.
- **Random**: the tracks in an album or folder are played in a random order.
- **Random on all media**: all of the tracks saved in the media are played in random order.

- **Repeat**: the tracks played are only those from the current album or folder.

OK Press this button to display the contextual menu for the Media function.

▲ ▼ Press this button to select the chosen play mode.

OK Press this button to confirm.

The choice made is displayed at the top of the screen.

Choosing a track to play

◀◀ ▶▶ Press one of these buttons to go to the previous/next track.

▲ ▼ Press one of these buttons to go to the previous/next folder.

File classification

LIST Make a long press on this button to display the different classifications.

◀◀ ▲ ▶▶ ▼ Select by **"Folder"**/**"Artist"**/**"Genre"**/ **"Playlist"**.
Depending on availability and type of device used.

OK Press **OK** to select the desired classification, then press **OK** again to confirm.

Playing files

LIST Make a short press on this button to display the chosen classification.

◀◀ ▲ ▶▶ ▼ Navigate in the list using the left/ right and up/down buttons.

OK Confirm the selection by pressing **OK**.

◀◀ ▶▶ Press one of these buttons to go to the previous/next track in the list. Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

▲ ▼ Press one of these buttons to go to the previous/next **"Folder"**/**"Artist"**/ **"Genre"**/**"Playlist"*** in the list.

* Depending on availability and the type of device used.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

(depending on model/depending on equipment)



Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

ⓘ Any additional equipment connected to the system must conform to the standard of the product or standard IEC 60950-1.

SRC / Press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select **"AUX"**.

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system. Operation of the controls is via the portable device.

! Do not connect a device to both the Jack auxiliary socket and the USB port at the same time.

CD player

Insert circular compact discs only.
Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the original player.
Insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

! External CD players connected via the USB port are not recognised by the system.

SRC / To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**CD**".

◀◀ ▶▶ Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST Press the **LIST** button to display the list of tracks on the CD.

◀◀ ▶▶ Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

Playing an MP3 compilation

Insert an MP3 compilation in the CD player.
The audio equipment searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before play begins.

! On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 directory levels.
However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played.
The folder structure is not observed during playback.
All of the files are displayed on a single level.

SRC / To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**CD**".

▲ ▼ Press one of the buttons to select a folder on the CD.

◀◀ ▶▶ Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST Press the **LIST** button to display the list of directories of the MP3 compilation.

◀◀ ▶▶ Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows music files on the telephone to be played via the vehicle's loudspeakers.

Connect the telephone.
(Refer to the "**Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone**" section).

SRC / Activate the streaming source by pressing **SOURCE.**
In certain cases, play of the audio files must be initiated from the keypad.

Audio files can be selected using the buttons on the audio system control panel and the steering mounted controls. The contextual information can be displayed in the screen, if the telephone supports the function. The audio quality depends on the quality of transmission by the telephone.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists).

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

The CD player can play files with “.mp3", “.wma", “.wav" and “.aac" file extensions, with a bit rate of 32 to 320 Kbps.
It also supports TAG mode (ID3 tag, WMA TAG).
No other file types (“.mp"4, etc.) can be read.
Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.
The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

Via the USB port, the system can play audio files with the extension ".mp3", “.wma", “.wav", “.cbr", “.vbr" with a bit rate of 32 to 320 Kbps.
No other file types (“.mp4", etc.) can be read.

Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.
The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

File names should have fewer than 20 characters, avoiding special characters (e.g. « ? ; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2, or Joliet, if possible, when burning the CD.
If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same burning standard be always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

! Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT 32 (File Allocation Table).

i It is recommended that you use genuine Apple® USB cables for correct operation.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

i The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used.
Check the instructions for your telephone and with your service provider for the services to which you have access.

Procedure from the telephone

Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

Procedure from the system

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

Select "**Connections**".

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Select "**Search for a device**".

OK Confirm with **OK.**

A window is displayed with a search in progress message.

In the list of devices detected, select a telephone to pair. Only one telephone can be paired at a time.

Completing the pairing

! To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not restricted.
A message appears in the screen confirming the pairing.

Information and advice

The "**Telephone**" menu gives access to the following functions in particular: "**Directory**", if your telephone equipment is fully compatible, "**Call log**", "**View paired devices**".
Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or confirm access by the system to each of these functions.

i Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, more help, etc.).

Managing connections

i The telephone connection automatically includes hands free operation and audio streaming.
The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone.
Both profiles may connect by default.

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

Select "**Connections**".

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Select "**Connections management**" and confirm. The list of paired devices is displayed.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Indicates that a device is connected.

i A number indicates the profile of the connection with the system:
- 1 for media or 1 for telephone.
- 2 for media and telephone.



Indicates connection of the audio steaming profile.



Indicates the hands-free telephone profile.



Select a telephone.

OK

Confirm with **OK.**



Then select and confirm:

- "**Connect telephone**"/ "**Disconnect telephone**": to connect/disconnect the telephone or the hands-free kit only.
- "**Connect media player**"/ "**Disconnect media player**": to connect/disconnect streaming only.
- "**Connect telephone + media player**"/"**Disconnect telephone + media player**": to connect/disconnect the telephone (hands-free kit and streaming).
- "**Delete connection**": to delete the pairing.

When you delete a pairing in the system, remember to delete it from your telephone as well.

OK

Confirm with **OK.**

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Select the "**YES**" tab in the screen using the buttons.

OK

Confirm with **OK.**

SRC /

Press this button at the steering mounted controls to accept the call.

Making a call

In the "**Telephone**" menu.

Select "**Call**".

Select "**Dial**".

Or

Select "**Directory**".

Or

Select "**Calls list**".

OK

Confirm with **OK.**

SRC /

Press this button for more than two seconds for access to your directory, then navigate using the thumb wheel.

Ending a call

In the "**Telephone**" menu.

Select "**End call**".

Confirm with **OK** to end the call.

SRC /

During a call, press one of these buttons for more than two seconds.

The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected via Bluetooth.

With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system.
Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.
The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Managing calls

OK During a call, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

End call

▲ ▼ In the contextual menu, select "**Hang up**" to end the call.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Microphone off

(so that the caller cannot hear)

▲ ▼ In the contextual menu:
- select "**Micro OFF**" to switch off the microphone.
- deselect "**Micro OFF**" to switch the microphone on.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Telephone mode

▲ ▼ In the contextual menu:
- select "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the telephone (for example, to leave the vehicle while continuing a conversation).
- deselect "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the vehicle.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

If the contact has been cut off, when you reconnect on returning to the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection will be restored automatically and sound returned to the system (depending on the compatibility of the telephone).
In some cases, the Telephone mode must be activated from the telephone.

Interactive voice response

▲ ▼ From the contextual menu, select "**DTMF tones**" and confirm to use the digital keypad to navigate in the interactive voice response menu.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Call waiting

▲ ▼ From the contextual menu, select "**Switch**" and confirm to return to a call left on hold.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Directory

▲ ▼ To access the directory, press and hold **SRC/TEL**.

▲ ▼ Select "**Directory**" to see the list of contacts.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

MENU To modify the contacts saved in the system, press **MENU** then select "**Telephone**" and confirm.
Select "**Directory management**" and confirm.
You can:
- "**Consult an entry**",
- "**Delete an entry**",
- "**Delete all entries**".

The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected via Bluetooth.

With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system. Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.
The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Voice recognition

This function allows you to use your smartphone's voice recognition via the system.

To start voice recognition, depending on the type of steering mounted controls:

Make a long press on the end of the lighting control stalk.

OR



Press this button.

Voice recognition requires the use of a compatible smartphone first connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
With the engine off, the audio system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio system operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the audio system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging the vehicle's battery.	Turn the ignition on to increase the charge of the battery.
The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.	In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio system switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction in volume or the CD play stopping.	Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD, etc.).	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source (radio, CD, etc.).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience and Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the audio functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance and Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.

The preset stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND button to return to the waveband (FM, FM2, DAB, AM) on which the stations are preset.
The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the RDS function to allow the system to see if a more powerful transmitter is within the geographic area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) is blocking reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through an automatic car wash or in an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for another frequency giving better reception of the station.	Switch off the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.

Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The Bluetooth connection is cut.	The battery of the peripheral device may not be sufficiently charged.	Charge the battery of the peripheral device.
The message "USB device error" is displayed in the screen.	The USB memory stick is not recognised. The USB memory stick may be corrupt.	Reformat the USB memory stick.
The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. - Check the content in the case of a burned CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - Due to insufficient quality, certain burned CDs will not be read by the audio system.
The CD sound is of poor quality.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
I am unable to play the music files on my smartphone via the USB port.	Depending on the smartphone, access by the audio system to music on the smartphone may have to be approved on the latter.	Manually activate the MTP profile on the smartphone (USB settings menu).

Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I am unable to access my voicemail.	Few telephones or service providers allow the use of this function.	Call the voicemail, via the telephone menu, using the number provided by your operator.
I am unable to access my directory of contacts.	Check the compatibility of your telephone.	
	You did not give access to your contacts when pairing the telephone.	Accept or confirm access by the system to the contacts on your telephone.
I am unable to continue a conversation when getting into my vehicle.	Telephone mode is activated.	Deselect telephone mode to transfer the call to the vehicle.
I am unable to pair my telephone by Bluetooth.	Telephones (models, versions of operating systems) have their own specific aspects in the pairing procedure and some telephones are not compatible.	Before starting the pairing procedure, delete the pairing of the telephone from the system **and** of the system from the telephone, so as to see the compatibility of the telephones.

PEUGEOT Connect Radio



Multimedia audio system – Applications – Bluetooth® telephone

Contents

First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	3
Menus	4
Applications	5
Radio	6
DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)	8
Media	9
Telephone	10
Settings	16
Frequently asked questions	18

The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.
The display of the message **Energy Economy Mode** signals that a change to standby is imminent.

The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.
https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/
https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/

First steps

With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).

Use the buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons on the left of the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

You can display the menus at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white. For pages with multiple tabs at the bottom of the screen, you can switch between pages either by tapping the tab for the desired page, or by using a finger, sliding the pages to the left or to the right.
Press in the grey zone to go back a level or confirm.

Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper banner of the touch screen:
- Repeat of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Reminder of the Radio Media and Telephone menu information.
- Reminder of the privacy information.
- Access to the Settings of the touch screen and digital instrument panel.



Selection of the sound source (depending on equipment):
- FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
- USB memory stick.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).
- CD player (depending on equipment).



i In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiences, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.

In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes.
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Steering mounted controls – Type 1





Radio:
Select the previous/next preset radio station.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select the previous/next track.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.



Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.



Change audio source (radio; USB; AUX if equipment connected; CD; streaming).



Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute/Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls – Type 2





Voice commands:
This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).
Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



Increase volume.



Mute/Restore the sound (depending on equipment).
Or
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.



Decrease volume.

SRC **Media** (short press): change the multimedia source.

Telephone (short press): start telephone call.
Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.

Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.
Media (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.
Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

LIST

Radio: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

Menus

Applications

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

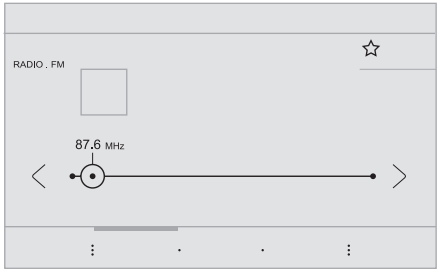
Access configurable equipment.



Radio Media

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

Select an audio source or radio station.



Telephone

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

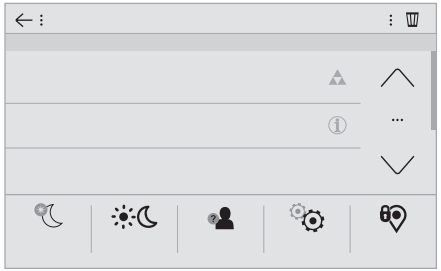
Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®. Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.



Settings

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).



Driving

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

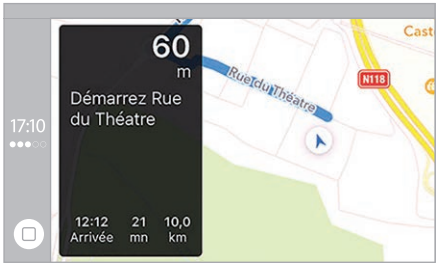
Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.



Navigation

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

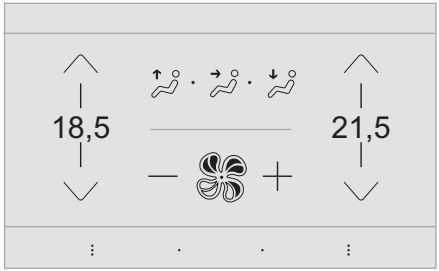
Configure the navigation and select your destination via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.



Air conditioning

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

Manage various temperature and air flow settings.



Applications

Viewing photos

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats:.tiff;.gif;.jpg/jpeg;.bmp;.png.

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "**Photos**".

Select a folder.

Select an image to view.

Press this button to display the details of the photo.

Press the back arrow to go back a level.

Managing messages

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "SMS".

Select the "SMS" tab.

Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

Press this button to search and select a recipient.

Select the "Quick messages" tab.

Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

Press this button to write a new message.

Press the basket alongside the selected message to delete it.

Press this button alongside the selected message to display the secondary page.

Press this button to edit and modify the existing text.

Press this button to write a new message.

Press the basket to delete the message.

Radio

Selecting a station

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or

MHz
KHz

Press the frequency.

Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.
The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

Changing waveband

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Band**" to change waveband.

Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.



Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is solid, the radio station is already preset.

Or

Select a radio station or frequency.

Press "**Preset**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating/Deactivating RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/Deactivate "**RDS**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

> The RDS, if activated, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of this RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Displaying text information

> The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/Deactivate "**News**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Playing TA messages

> The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages.
> To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/Deactivate "**TA**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Audio settings



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Audio settings**".



Select the "**Tone**" or "**Balance**" or "**Sound**" or "**Voice**" or "**Ringtones**" tab to configure the audio settings.



Press the back arrow to confirm.

In the "**Tone**" tab, the **Ambience** audio settings, as well as **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source.
In the "**Balance**" tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources.
In the "**Sound**" tab, activate or deactivate "**Volume linked to speed**", "**Auxiliary input**" and "**Touch tones**".

The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.

Onboard audio: Arkamys© Sound Staging optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Digital radio provides higher quality reception.
The different "multiplexes" offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Band**" to select the "**DAB band**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

FM-DAB Tracking

"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB Tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/Deactivate "**FM-DAB Tracking**".



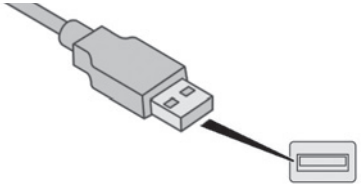
Press in the grey zone to confirm.

If "FM-DAB Tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to FM analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.
Once the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on FM, or if the "FM-DAB Tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

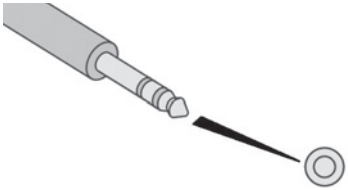
! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

Depending on equipment



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.
Operation of controls is via the portable device.

Selecting the source

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**SOURCES**" button.

Choose the source.

Bluetooth®audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated, first adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of your system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.
Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/ albums/genres/playlists/audiobooks/ podcasts), you can also use a classification structured in the form of a library.
The default classification used is by artist.
To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

The system supports USB Mass Storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Device management is done by the audio system controls.
Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wav", ".wma", ".aac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.
Sampling frequencies supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g. " "?.; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device be used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.
If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same burning standard be always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

USB ports

Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB sockets compatible with the **CarPlay®**, **MirrorLink™** or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's MirrorLink™ technology on the vehicle screen.
The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i The "MirrorLink™" function requires a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink**" ™ function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and complete the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to display the secondary page.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Once the connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

i There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications compatible with the smartphone's CarPlay® technology on the vehicle screen when the smartphone's CarPlay® function has been previously activated.
As the processes and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **Telephone** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



If the smartphone is already connected by Bluetooth®.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.

Press the **"PHONE"** button to go to the secondary page.



Press **"CarPlay"** to display the CarPlay® interface.

i On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.



You can go to the CarPlay® navigation at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

Android Auto smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



On your smartphone, download the Android Auto application.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's Android Auto technology on the vehicle screen.
The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**Android Auto**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and complete the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® is started on the smartphone

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to display the secondary page.



Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

i There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

! To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press "**Bluetooth search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.

Press the "details" button of a paired device.

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:
- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Internet data**".

Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone.
All three profiles may connect by default.

The available services depend on the network, SIM card, and device Bluetooth compatibility. Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you.

The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Managing paired telephones

This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.

Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone

Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.

Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And

Make a long press

on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or

Press "**End call**".

Making a call

! Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.

Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or make a long press

on the steering mounted **PHONE** button.

Press "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

Press "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or

Make a long press

on the steering mounted button.

Press "**Recent calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

i It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Setting the ringtone

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Ring volume**" to display the volume bar.

Press the arrows or move the cursor to set the ring volume.

Settings

Profile settings

! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".

Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to save.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press this button to activate the profile.

Press the back arrow again to confirm.

00.0 Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

Adjusting the brightness

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press **Brightness**.

Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (according to version).

Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Modifying system settings

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

Press "**System configuration**".

Press the "**Units**" tab to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Press the "**Factory settings**" tab to return to the initial settings.

! Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (depending on version).

Press the "**System info**" tab to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Press the "**Privacy**" tab,

or

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Privacy**" to activate or deactivate the privacy data mode.

Activate or deactivate:
- **"No sharing (data, vehicle position)"**.
- **"Data sharing only"**
- **"Sharing data and the vehicle position"**

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Screen configuration**".

Press "**Brightness**".

Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (according to version).

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press "**Animation**".

Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".

Select "**Animated transitions**".

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Selecting the the language

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Language**" to change the language.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Setting the time

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Time**".

Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

Press "**OK**" to save the time.

Press this button to define the time zone.

Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).

Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).

Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).

Press the back arrow to save the settings.

The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Setting the date

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Date**".



Press this button to define the date.



Press the back arrow to save the date.



Select the display format of the date.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.

Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS Synchronisation" is deactivated.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your system.

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the upper band to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of received stations. The name of the radio station changes.	The station is not received or has changed its name in the list.	Press the round arrow on the "List" tab of the "Radio" page.
	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.	

Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
Some characters of the information for in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	Start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at the Brand's website (services).
Android Auto and CarPlay do not work.	Android Auto and CarPlay may not activate if the USB cables are of poor quality.	Use authentic USB cables to ensure compatibility.
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, etc.).
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the telephone directory display settings.

Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
When changing the setting of treble and bass, the equalizer setting is deselected. When changing the equalizer setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice versa.	Modify the treble and bass or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice versa.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust the audio functions to the middle position.
When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.	Start the engine to increase the charge of the battery.

PEUGEOT Connect Nav



GPS satellite navigation – Applications – Multimedia audio system – Bluetooth® telephone

Contents

First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	3
Menus	4
Voice commands	5
Navigation	13
Connected navigation	15
Applications	18
Radio	23
DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)	24
Media	25
Telephone	27
Configuration	31
Frequently asked questions	33

The different functions and settings described vary depending on the version and configuration of your vehicle.

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.
The display of the **Energy Economy Mode** message signals that a change to standby is imminent.

The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.
https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/
https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/

First steps

With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).

Use the menu buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons to access the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

You can display the menus at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white.
Press the back arrow to go back a level.
Press "OK" to confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the side bars or in the upper bar of the touch screen (depending on equipment):

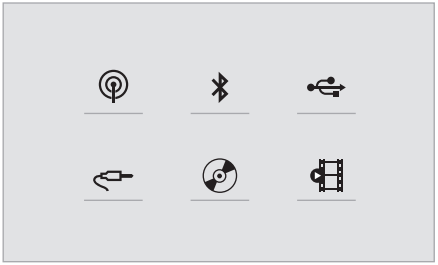
- Repeat of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Go directly to the selection of the audio source, to the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
- Go to the "Notifications" of messages, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
- Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.





Selection of the sound source (depending on equipment):

- FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
- USB memory stick.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).
- CD Player (depending on equipment).
- Video (depending on equipment).



In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.

In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes.
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Voice commands:
This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).
Short press, system voice commands.
Long press, smartphone voice commands via the system.

Increase volume.

Mute/Restore the sound (depending on equipment).
Or
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Decrease volume.

SRC **Media** (short press): change the multimedia source.

Telephone (short press): start telephone call.
Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.

Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.
Media (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.
Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

LIST **Radio**: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

Menus

Connected navigation

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.
Use services available in real time, depending on equipment.



Applications

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

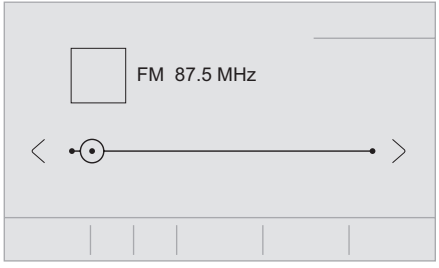
Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ (available depending on the country) or Android Auto.
Check the state of the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.



Radio Media

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

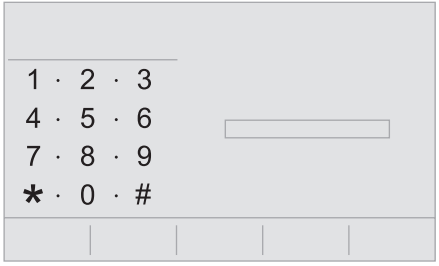
Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.



Telephone

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

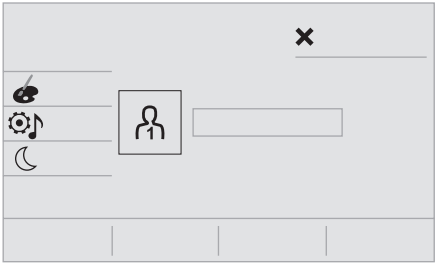
Connect a telephone via Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.



Settings

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

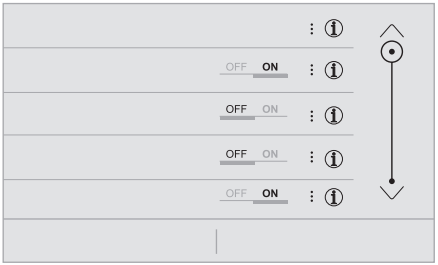
Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).



Vehicle

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

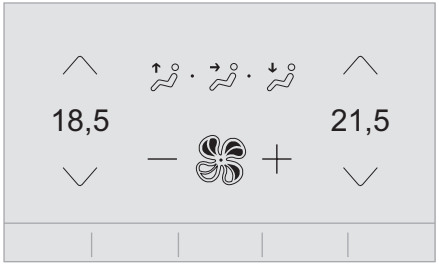
Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.



Air conditioning

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

Manage various temperature and air flow settings.



Voice commands

Steering mounted controls

Voice commands:
This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).
Pressing this button activates the voice commands function.

! To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please observe the following recommendations:

- **speak natural language in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.**
- always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
- for best operation, it is recommended that the windows and sunroof be closed to avoid extraneous interference (depending on version).
- before making a voice command, ask other passengers not to speak.

First steps

Example of a "voice command" for navigation:
"**Navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London**"
Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media:
"**Play artist Madonna**"
Example of a "voice command" for the telephone:
"**Call David Miller**"

! The voice commands, with a choice of 17 languages (Arabic, Brazilian, Portuguese, Czech, Danish, Dutch, English, Farsi, French, German, Italian, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Spanish, Swedish, Turkish), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system.
For some voice commands, there are alternative synonyms.
Example: Guide to/Navigate to/Go to/...
The voice commands in Arabic for: "Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city", are not available.

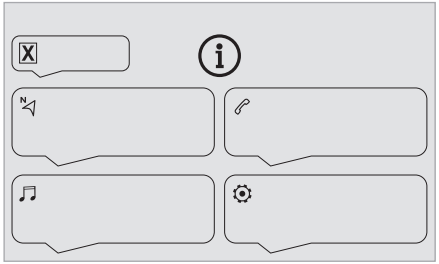
Information – Using the system



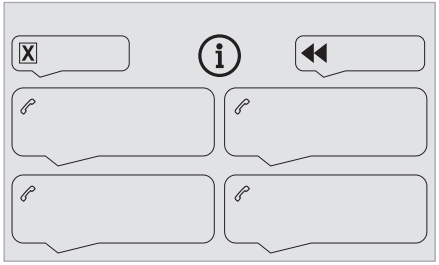
Press the Push To Talk button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask to me do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by step. There's more information available in "novice" mode.
You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.



When the voice commands are activated, by briefly pressing the button, help is displayed on the touchscreen, offering various menus and allowing you to interact with the system by voice.



Upon selecting a menu item you have a choice of commands.



Global voice commands

i These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice commands" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
	There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say: "help with phone", "help with navigation", "help with media" or "help with radio". For an overview on how to use voice controls, you can say "help with voice controls".
	Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.
Set dialogue mode as novice – expert	
Select user 1/Select profile John	
Increase temperature	
Decrease temperature	

"Navigation" voice commands

i These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice commands" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

Voice commands	Help messages
Navigate home	To plan a route, say "navigate to" followed by the address, the contact name or an intersection. For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", "navigate to contact, John Miller", or "navigate to intersection of Regent Street, London". You can specify if it's a preferred address, or a Point of Interest. For example, say "navigate to preferred address, Tennis club", or "navigate to POI Heathrow Airport in London". Or, you can just say, "navigate home". To see Points of Interest on a map, you can say things like "show POI hotels in Banbury". For more information say "help with points of interest" or "help with route guidance". To choose a destination, say something like "navigate to line three" or "select line two". If you can't find the destination but the street's right, say for example "select the street in line three". To move around a displayed list, you can say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.
Navigate to work	
Navigate to preferred address, Tennis club	
Navigate to contact, John Miller	
Navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London	
Tell me the remaining distance	You can say "stop" or "resume route guidance". To get information about your current route, you can say "tell me the remaining time", "remaining distance" or "arrival time". To learn more commands, try saying "help with navigation".
Tell me the remaining time	
Tell me the arrival time	
Stop route guidance	

Show POI hotel at the destination	To see points of interest on a map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury", "show nearby parking", "show hotel at the destination" or "show petrol station along the route". If you prefer to navigate directly to a point of interest, you can say "navigate to nearby petrol station". If you feel you are not being well understood, try to say the word "POI" in front of the point of interest. For example say "navigate to POI restaurant at the destination". To choose a POI, say something like "select line 2". If you've searched for a Point of Interest and don't see the one you're after, you can filter further by saying something like "select POI in line 2", or "select the city in line 3". You can also scroll through the list by saying "next page" or "previous page".
Show POI petrol station nearby	
Navigate to POI Heathrow Airport in London	
Navigate to POI petrol station along the route	

Depending on the country, give the destination instructions (address) in the language used by the system.

"Radio Media" voice commands

These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice commands" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
Turn on source radio – Streaming Bluetooth – …	You can select an audio source by saying "turn on source" followed by the device name. For example, "turn on source, Streaming Bluetooth", or "turn on source, radio". Use the command "play" to specify the type of music you'd like to hear. You can choose between "song", "artist", or "album". Just say something like "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".
Tune to channel BBC Radio 2	You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say for example "tune to preset number five".
Tune to 98.5 FM	
Tune to preset number five	
What's playing?	To choose what you'd like to play, start by saying "play" and then the item. For example, say "play song Hey Jude", "play line 3" or "select line 2". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.
Play song Hey Jude	I'm not sure what you'd like to play. Please say "play" and then a song title, an album title, or an artist name. For example, say "play song Hey Jude", "play artist Madonna" or "play album Thriller". To select a line number from the display, say "select line two". To move around a displayed list, you can say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.
Play artist Madonna	
Play album Thriller	

Media voice commands are available only for a USB connection.

"Telephone" voice commands

These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice commands" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.
If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session will be closed.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
Call David Miller*	To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example, "Dial 10,7,776,835,417". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a text, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of calls, say "display calls". For more information on SMS, you can say "help with texting". To choose a contact, say something like "select line three". To move around the list say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.
Call voicemail*	
Display calls*	

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

"Text message" voice commands

These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice commands" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.
If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session will be closed.

The "Text messages" voice commands function allows you to dictate and send an SMS.
Dictate your text taking care to make a short pause between each word.
At the end of the operation, the voice recognition system will automatically create an SMS.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
Send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late	From the list of quick messages, say the name of the one you'd like to send. To move around the list you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.
Send SMS to John Miller, I'm just arriving	Please say "call" or "send quick message to", and then select a line from the list. To move around a list shown on the display, you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.
Send SMS to David Miller at the office, don't wait for me	
Listen to most recent message*	To hear your last message, you can say "listen to most recent message". When you want to send a text, there's a set of quick messages ready for you to use. Just use the quick message name and say something like "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late". Check the phone menu for the names of the supported messages.

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

Navigation

Choice of a destination

To a new destination

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Enter address**".

Select the "**Country**".

Enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" and confirm by pressing on the suggestions displayed.

OK

Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

And/Or

Select "**See on map**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

Zoom out/zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

In order to be able to use the navigation, it is necessary to fill in the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" on the virtual keyboard or take it from the list in "**Contact**" or in the "**History**" of addresses.

Without confirmation of the street number, you will be guided to one end of the street.

To a recent destination

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Recent**" tab.

Select the address chosen in the list to display the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

Select "**Position**" to visualise the arrival point geographically.

To "My home" or "My work"

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Preferred**" tab.

Select "**My home**".

Or

Select "**My work**".

Or

Select a preset favourite destination.

To a contact

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Contact**" tab.

Select a contact in the list to start navigation.

To points of interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Points of interest**".

Select the "**Travel**", or "**Leisure**" or "**Commercial**" or "**Public**" or "**Geographic**" tab.

Or

Select "**Search**" to enter the name and address of a POI.

Press "**OK**" to start calculation of the route.

To a point on the map

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Select the destination by pressing on the map.

Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.

Press this button to start navigation.

Or

Press this button to save the address displayed.

i A long press on an item opens a list of POIs nearby.

To GPS coordinates

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Touch the screen with a finger to go to the next image.

Press this button to display the world map.
Using the grid, select by zoom the desired country or region.

Press this button to display or enter the GPS coordinates.

A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and "**Longitude**" coordinates.

Choose the type of coordinates:
DMS for: Degrees, Minutes, Seconds.
DD for: Degrees, Decimals.

Press this button to start navigation.

Or

Press this button to save the address displayed.

OR

Press this button to enter the value for "**Latitude**" using the virtual keypad.

And

N
W E
S

Press this button to enter the value for "**Longitude**" using the virtual keypad.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel)

TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are linked to a European standard on the broadcasting of traffic information via the RDS system on FM radio, transmitting traffic information in real time.
The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away during navigation, so as to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.

The display of danger zones depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Connected navigation

Depending on version

Depending on the equipment level of the vehicle

Network connection provided by the vehicle



OR

Network connection provided by the user



For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the vehicle brand's internet website in your country.

Connected navigation connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

For access to connected navigation, you can use the connection provided by the vehicle via the "Emergency or assistance call" services or use your smartphone as a modem.
Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.

Network connection provided by the vehicle



The system is automatically connected to the modem included for the "Emergency or assistance calls" services and does not require a connection provided by the user via their smartphone.

Network connection provided by the user

USB connection



Connect a USB cable.
The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

Bluetooth connection



Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Applications" section).

Wi-Fi connection

Select a Wi-Fi network found by the system and connect.

This function is only available if it has been activated either via the "Notifications" or via the "Applications" menu.

Press "**Notifications**".

Select Wi-Fi to activate it.

OR

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".

Select the "**Secured**" or "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.

Select a network.

Using the virtual keypad, enter the "**Key**" for the Wi-Fi network and the "**Password**".

Press "**OK**" to start the connection.

Restrictions of use:
- With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only with a Wi-Fi connection.
- With MirrorLink™, connection sharing is only with a USB connection.

The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.

When "TOMTOM TRAFFIC" appears, the services are available.

The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.
A Connected Services pack:
- Weather,
- Filling stations,
- Car park,
- Traffic,
- POI local search.

A Danger zone pack (option).

The processes and standards are constantly changing; for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, we recommend that you **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**

Settings specific to connected navigation

In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

Select "**Map**".

Activate or deactivate:
- "**Allow declaration of danger zones**".
- "**Guidance to final destination on foot**"
- "**Display recommended speed**"

These settings must be made according to each profile.

Select "**Alerts**".

Activate or deactivate "**Advise of car parks nearby**".

Activate or deactivate "**Filling station alert**".

Activate or deactivate "**Risk areas alert**".

Next, select this button.

Activate: "**Safety zones alert**"

Activate: "**Give an audible warning**"

Activate or deactivate "**Advise of POI 1 nearby**".

Activate or deactivate "**Advise of POI 2 nearby**".

For access to connected navigation, you must select the option: "**Authorise sending information**" in "Settings".

You can access the "Notifications" at any time in the upper banner.

The display of danger zones depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Declaration of "Danger zones"

To distribute information on the declaration of danger zones, you should tick the option: "**Allow declaration of danger zones**".

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**Declare a new danger zone**" button located in the side bars or the upper bar of the touch screen (depending on equipment).

Select the option "**Type**" to choose the type of "danger zone".

Select the "**Speed**" option and enter it using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to save and distribute the information.

Authorising sending of information

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**System settings**".

Select the "**Privacy mode**" tab.

Activate or deactivate:
- "**No sharing (data, vehicle position)**".
- "**Data sharing only**"
- "**Sharing data and the vehicle position**"

"Danger zones" pack updates

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**System settings**".

Select the "**System info**" tab.

Select "**View**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Select "**Update(s) due**".

You can download the system and map updates from the website for the brand. The update procedure can also be found on the website.

Once you have downloaded the updates, the installation on the vehicle must be done with the engine running and vehicle stationary.

Displaying the weather

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press this button to display the list of services.

Select "**View map**".

Select "**Weather**".

Press this button to display primary information.

Press this button to display the detailed weather information.

The temperature displayed at 6 a.m. will be the maximum temperature for the day. The temperature displayed at 6 p.m. will be the minimum temperature for the night.

Applications

USB ports

Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB ports compatible with the **CarPlay®**, **MirrorLink™** or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

Connectivity

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the **CarPlay®**, **MirrorLink™** or **Android Auto** functions.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications compatible with the smartphone's CarPlay® technology on the vehicle screen when the smartphone's CarPlay® function has been previously activated.
As the processes and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



Press on "**Telephone**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the CarPlay® function.



Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

Available depending on the country of sale.

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's MirrorLink™ technology on the vehicle screen.
The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

The **MirrorLink™** function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the MirrorLink™ function.

Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and complete the connection.

Once the connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Android Auto smartphone connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's Android Auto technology on the vehicle screen.
The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the vehicle brand's internet website in your country.

As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

The "**Android Auto**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "Android Auto" function.



Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and complete the connection.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.

Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

In Android Auto mode, the function to display the menus by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers is deactivated.

There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Vehicle apps

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "**Vehicle Apps**" to display the applications home page.

Internet Browser

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "**Internet Browser**" function.

Press "**Internet Browser**" to display the browser home page.

Select your country of residence.

OK Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.

Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

Bluetooth connection®

As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone

Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Bluetooth connection**".

Select "**Search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.

Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".

The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation (where the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.

Select one or more profiles.

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

OK

Wi-Fi connection

Network connection by the smartphone's Wi-Fi.

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".

WIFI

Select the "**Secured**" or "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.

Select a network.

Using the virtual keypad, enter the "**Key**" for the Wi-Fi network and the "**Password**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to start the connection.

The Wi-Fi connection and the sharing of the Wi-Fi connection are exclusive.

Wi-Fi connection sharing

Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Share Wi-Fi connection**".

Select the "**Activation**" tab to activate or deactivate sharing of the Wi-Fi connection.

And/Or

Select the "**Settings**" to change the name of the system network and the password.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

To protect against unauthorised access and make your systems as secure as possible, the use of a complex security code or password is recommended.

Managing connections

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Manage connection**".

With this function you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

Radio

Selecting a station

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press "**Frequency**".

Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Radio stations**" in the secondary page.

Press "**Frequency**".

Enter the values using the virtual keypad.
First enter the units then click on the decimals zone to enter the figures after the decimal point.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.
The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.
(refer to the corresponding section)

Press "**Presets**".

Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Changing waveband

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

To change the waveband, press "Band…" displayed at the top right of the screen.

Activating/Deactivating RDS

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

Activate/Deactivate "**Station tracking**".

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Displaying text information

The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

Activate/Deactivate "**Display radio text**".

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Playing TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages.
To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

Select "**Announcements**".

Activate/Deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Digital radio provides higher quality reception.
The different multiplexes offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press "Band…" at the top right of the screen to display the **DAB** waveband.

DAB-FM auto tracking

"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB-FM tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

Activate/Deactivate "**FM-DAB Tracking**".

Activate/Deactivate "**Station tracking**".

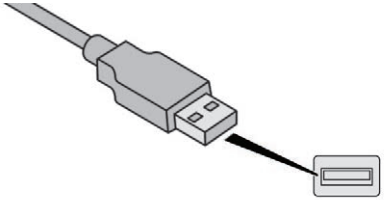
OK Press "**OK**".

If "DAB-FM tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to FM analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume. Once the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on FM ("**DAB-FM**" option greyed out), or "DAB-FM tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



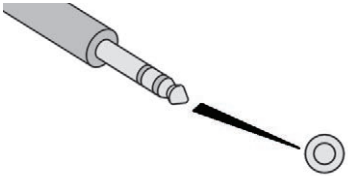
Insert the USB memory stick in the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary Socket (AUX)

Depending on equipment



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.
Operation of controls is via the portable device.

CD player

Depending on equipment

Insert the CD in the player.

Selecting the source

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Select "**Source**".

Choose the source.

Watching a video

For safety reasons and because of required sustained attention of the driver, viewing a video is only possible when the **vehicle is stationary** and the ignition is switched on; as soon as movement resumes, the video stops.

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

Video control commands are accessible only through the touchscreen.

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Select "**Source**".



Select **Video** to start the video.



To remove the USB memory stick, press the pause button to stop the video, then remove the memory stick.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated, first adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/ albums/genres/playlists/audiobooks/ podcasts).
The default classification used is by artists. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Device management is done by the audio system controls.
Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma", ".aac", ".flac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.
The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 kHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g.: " "?.; ù) in order to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device be used.

CD player (depending on equipment).
In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.
If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone

Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press "**Bluetooth search**".

Or

Select "**Search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.

Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:
- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".

Activation of the profile; "**Mobile internet data**" is obligatory for connected navigation having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.

Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is reconnected automatically and within around 30 seconds after switching on the ignition the pairing is done without any action on your part (with Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button.

Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.

The available services depend on the network, SIM card, and device Bluetooth compatibility. Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you.

The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Managing paired telephones

This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.

Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone

Select the basket at top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.

Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

Make a short press on the steering mounted telephone button to accept an incoming call.

And

Make a long press

on the steering mounted telephone button to reject the call.

Or

Select "**End call**" on the touch screen.

Making a call

! Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.

Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or make a long press

on the steering mounted telephone button.

Select "**Contact**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or

Make a long press

on the steering mounted telephone button.

Select "**Calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

i It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Managing contacts/entries

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Select "**Contact**".

Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

In the "**Telephone**" tab, enter the telephone numbers for the contact.

In the "**Address**" tab, enter the addresses for the contact.

In the "**Email**" tab, enter the email addresses for the contact.

The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

Managing messages

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**All**" or "**Received**" or "**Sent**" tab.



Select the detail of the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Answer**" to send a quick message stored in the system.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.



Press " **Play**" to hear the message.

Access to "**Messages**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.
Depending on the smartphone, access to your messages or email may be slow.

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used.
Check in the manual for your smartphone and with your service provider for the services available to you.

Managing quick messages



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Quick messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Delayed**" or "**My arrival**" or "**Not available**" or "**Other**" tab with the possibility of creating new messages.



Press "**Create**" to write a new message.



Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Transfer**" to select the addressee(s).



Press " **Play**" to start playing the message.

Managing email



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Incoming**" or "**Sent**" or "**Not read**" tab.

Select the message chosen in one of the lists.

Press " **Play**" to start playing the message.

! Access to "**Email**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.

Settings

Audio settings

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

"**Distribution**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

OK Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

! The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle. Available only with the front and rear speakers configuration.

i The audio settings **Ambience** (6 optional ambiences) and **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source.
Activate or Deactivate "**Loudness**".
The settings for "**Position**" (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources.
Activate or Deactivate "**Touch tones**", "**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".

i Onboard audio: Arkamys© Sound Staging optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

Profile settings

! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Setting of the profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".

Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.

Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB port.
Select the photograph.

OK Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.

OK Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.

The location for the photograph is square; the system reshapes the original photograph if in another format.

00.0 Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

Initialisation of the profile selected activates the English language by default.

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to associate the "**Audio settings**" with it.



Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

"**Distribution**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

OK Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Screen configuration**".

Select "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".

Select "**Brightness**".



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.

Resetting the system to "Factory Settings" activates English by default, as well as Fahrenheit degrees, and turns off daylight saving (summer) time.

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Selecting the language



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

Setting the date



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Set time-date**".

Select "**Date**".



Press this button to define the date.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Select the display format of the date.

Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated.

Setting the time



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Time**".



Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Press this button to define the time zone.



Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).



Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).



Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Colour schemes

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.

As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the colour scheme is only possible when the **vehicle is stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Select "**Colour schemes**".



Select a colour scheme in the list then press "**OK**" to confirm.

Every time the colour scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your system.

Navigation

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The guidance criteria may be in conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll road).	Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The audible warning of "Danger zones" does not work.	The audible warning is not active or the volume is too low.	Activate the audible warning in the "Navigation" menu and check the voice volume in the audio settings.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select setting for the "Traffic info " function in the list of route settings (Without, Manual or Automatic).
I receive a "Danger zone" alert which is not on my route.	If guidance is not active, the system announces all "Danger zones" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger zones" located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to see the exact position of the "Danger zone". Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than navigation instructions or to reduce the time for the announcement.
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways, etc.) are listed for the traffic information.	This is perfectly normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.

The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel, etc.) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This behaviour is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.
My navigation is no longer connected.	During start-up and in certain geographical areas, the connection may be unavailable.	Check that the connected services are activated (settings, contract).

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) is blocking reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received. The name of the radio station changes.	The station is not received or has changed its name in the list. Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.	Press on the "Update list" button in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.

Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system. The CD has been burned in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf, etc.). The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.	Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. Check the content in the case of a burned CD: consult the advice in the "AUDIO" section. The audio system CD does not read DVDs. Due to poor quality, certain burned CDs will not be read by the audio system.

There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	Upon insertion of a new media, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This is perfectly normal.
The CD sound is of poor quality.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
Some characters of the information for the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	Start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, etc.).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronising contacts are synchronising the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronisations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the telephone directory display settings.
The system does not receive SMS.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	

Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
When changing the setting of treble and bass, the equalizer setting is deselected. When changing the equalizer setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice versa.	Modify the treble and bass or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice versa.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. It is recommended that the audio settings (Bass:, Treble:, Balance) be adjusted to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.	Start then vehicle's engine to increase the charge of the battery.
The date and time cannot be set.	Setting of the date and time is only available if the synchronisation with the satellites is deactivated.	Settings menu/Options/Time-Date setting. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate the "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).

A

ABS 98
Accessories 95, 120
Access to the spare wheel....192
Active Safety Brake.... 18-19, 150-152
AdBlue® 23, 31, 183-184
AdBlue® tank 185
Additive, Diesel 21, 182
Adjusting headlamp beam height 91
Adjusting headlamps 91
Adjusting head restraints 64
Adjusting seat 59
Adjusting the air distribution 75-76
Adjusting the air flow.... 75-76
Adjusting the date 35, 17, 32
Adjusting the height and reach of the steering wheel 57
Adjusting the lumbar support....60
Adjusting the temperature 75-76
Adjusting the time 35, 17, 33
Advanced Grip Control 101-102
Advice on driving 115-116
Airbags 19, 106, 108, 110
Airbags, curtain.... 107-108, 110
Airbags, front....106, 108, 110
Airbags, lateral....107-108
Air conditioning 76, 76-77
Air conditioning, automatic 83
Air conditioning, digital 78
Air conditioning, dual-zone automatic 75-76
Air conditioning, manual 75, 78, 83
Air intake 75-77
Alarm....53, 55
Alarm, volumetric....53
Anti-lock braking system (ABS)....97-98
Antitheft / Immobiliser....120
Apple CarPlay connection 12, 18
Area, loading.... 38-39, 48-49, 68
Armrest....60
Armrest, front....64
Assistance call 96
Assistance, emergency braking 97-98, 152
Audible warning 97
Audio streaming (Bluetooth) 9, 9, 25-26

B

Battery.... 176, 181, 203-206
Battery, 12 V....203
Battery, charging....205
Battery, remote control 45-47, 82
Blind spot monitoring system....157-158
Blind spot sensors 158
BlueHDi....31, 187
Bluetooth (hands-free).....10-11, 13-14, 27-28
Bluetooth (telephone).....13-15, 27-28
Bonnet....177-178
Boot lid 42, 45
Bottle holder....64
Brake discs....182-183
Brake lamps 199
Brakes 14, 182-183
Braking assistance system 97-98
Braking, automatic emergency.. 18-19, 150-152
Braking, dynamic emergency 121-124
Brightness....16
Bulbs 196
Bulbs (changing) 195-197
Bulbs (changing, type) 196

C

Cable, audio....25
Cable, Jack 25
Capacity, fuel tank 171-172
Cap, fuel filler.... 171-172
CD 9, 9, 25
CD, MP3....9, 9, 25
Central locking 38, 42
Changing a bulb.... 195-199
Changing a fuse.... 201-203
Changing a wheel 188, 191-192
Changing a wiper blade 92-93
Changing the remote control battery....45
Charger, induction....66-67
Charger, wireless....66-67
Checking the engine oil level....30
Checking the levels....179-181
Checking tyre pressures (using the kit).....189, 191
Checks 178, 181-183
Checks, routine....181-183
Child lock....114
Child lock, electric....114
Children....112
Children (safety)....114
Child seats 105, 109, 111-113
Child seats, conventional.... 111
Closing the doors....38, 42
Configuration, vehicle....29
Connection, Bluetooth ...11, 13-15, 21-22, 27-28
Connection, MirrorLink 11-12, 19
Connection, Wi-Fi network....22
Control, emergency boot release 45
Control, emergency door....44
Control, heated seats....61
Control stalk, lighting 85, 87
Control stalk, wipers 91-92, 94
Courtesy lamp....84
Courtesy lamp, front 84
Courtesy lamp, rear 84
Courtesy lamps....84
Cruise control.... 136, 139-145, 148-150
Cruise control, adaptive....144
Cruise control by speed limit recognition 136

Cruise control, dynamic with Stop function 136, 142-145, 148
Cup holder 64

D

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) - Digital radio 6-7, 8, 24
Date (setting) 35, 17, 32
Daytime running lamps 85, 87, 198
Deactivating the passenger airbag 106, 110
Deactivation of DSC (ESC) 99
Deadlocking 43
Defrosting 58, 78
Demisting 78
Demisting, rear 57, 79
Demisting, rear screen 57, 79
Diesel 213-216
Dimensions 208
Dipstick 30, 179-180
Direction indicators 86-87, 198, 199
Display screen, instrument panel 29, 130
Distance Alert 18, 150-151
Doors, side-hinged 42-43
Driver's attention warning 159
Driving 115
Driving abroad 86
Dynamic stability control (DSC) 20, 97-99, 101-102

E

Earth point, remote 178
EBFD 98
Economy mode 176
Electric windows 55
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) 97-98
Emergency braking assistance (EBA) 97-98
Emergency call 96
Emergency warning lamps 97
Emissions control system, SCR 183
Energy economy mode 176
Engine 211-216
Engine compartment 178
Engine, Diesel 18, 170, 187, 213-216
Engine, petrol 170, 178, 211-212
Engines 210-216
Engine self-diagnosis 17
Environment 46, 82
ESC (electronic stability control) 97
Extended traffic sign recognition 136

F

Fatigue detection 159
Filling the AdBlue® tank 185
Filling the fuel tank 170-172
Filter, air 181
Filter, Diesel fuel 179
Filter, oil 182
Filter, particle 19, 181-182
Filter, passenger compartment 181
Finisher 195
Fitting a wheel 193-195
Fitting roof bars 177
Fittings, interior 64
Flap, fuel filler 171-172
Flap, removable 70-71
Flashing indicators 86-87, 199
Foglamp, rear 25, 85, 199
Foglamps, front 85, 90-91, 199
Foglamps, rear 85
Folding the rear seats 63-64
Frequency (radio) 23-24
Fuel 170
Fuel tank 171
Fusebox, engine compartment 203
Fuses 201-203

G

Gauge, fuel 171-172
Gearbox, automatic 116, 125-132, 182
Gearbox, electronic 130-132
Gearbox, manual 125-126, 130-132, 182
Gear lever, automatic gearbox 126-129
Gear lever, manual gearbox 125-126
Gear shift indicator ~ Gear efficiency indicator 130
Glove box 64
G.P.S. 14

H

Hazard warning lamps 97
Hazard warning lamps, automatic operation 97
headlamp adjustment 91
Headlamp adjustment 91
Headlamp beam height 91
Headlamps, automatic illumination 86-88
Headlamps, dipped beam 27, 85, 197
Headlamps, halogen 196
Headlamps, intelligent beam 27, 88-90, 158
Headlamps, main beam 27, 85, 198
Head restraints 60
Head restraints, front 64
Head restraints, rear 63-64
Heating 75, 79-81, 83
Heating, additional 53, 79-81
Heating, programmable 53, 79-81

Hill Assist Descent Control (HADC) 26, 102-103
Hill Descent Control 102-103
Hill start assist....124-125
Horn....97

I

Identification, vehicle 217
Ignition....119-120, 29
Ignition on....120
Immobiliser, electronic....44, 47, 120
Indicator, AdBlue® range....31
Indicator, coolant temperature....28-30
Indicator, engine oil level 30
Indicator lamps, operation 15-16, 85
Indicator lamps, status....15
Indicators, direction 86
Inflating tyres 183
Inflating tyres and accessories (using the kit) 189, 191
Instrument panel 11
Instrument panels 29
Internet browser....21

J

Jack....191, 25
Jump starting 204

K

Key 37, 39, 42, 47
Key, electronic....37, 120
Keyless Entry and Starting 37-40, 42, 44, 47-48, 118-119
Key with remote control 37, 42, 44
Kit, hands-free 10-11, 13-14, 27-28
Kit, temporary puncture repair....188-189, 191

L

Labels....4
Labels, identification....217
Lamps, front 197-199
Lamps, parking 87
Lamps, rear....199
Lane departure warning active....20, 153
LEDs - Light-emitting diodes 87
Level, brake fluid....180
Level, Diesel additive....181-182
Level, engine coolant....28-30, 180
Level, engine oil 30, 179-180
Levels and checks 178-181
Level, screenwash fluid 92, 180-181
Light-emitting diodes - LEDs 87
Lighting....85
Lighting, cornering 90-91
Lighting, directional....90
Lighting, guide-me home....88
Lighting, welcome 88
Loading 68, 177
Load reduction mode 177
Load restraint 67
Locating your vehicle 44
Locking....37, 42, 47
Locking from the inside....48-49
Low fuel level 171-172
Lumbar 60

M

Markings, identification....217
Mat 64-65, 118
Memorising a speed 149-150
Menu 12
Menu, main 4
Menus (audio) 4-5, 4-5
Messages....30
Messages, quick 30
Mirror, rear view 58
Mirrors, door....57-58, 79, 157-158
Misfuel prevention....172
MP3 CD....9

N

Number plate lamps....200

O

Obstacle detection....160
Oil change 179-180
Oil consumption 179-180
Oil, engine 179-180
On-board tools 187-188
Opening the bonnet 177-178
Opening the boot 37
Opening the doors 37
Opening the fuel filler flap....171
Overhead storage 65
Overload indicator....21

P

Pads, brake 182-183
Paint colour code 217
Parking brake 121, 182-183
Parking brake, automatic electronic 16, 20, 24-25, 121-124
Parking sensors, audible and visual 160
Parking sensors, front 161
Parking sensors, rear 160
Petrol 211-212
PEUGEOT Connect Nav 1
PEUGEOT Connect Radio 1
Plates, identification 217
Player, Apple® 10, 9, 26
Player, MP3 CD 9, 25
Player, USB 7, 9, 25
Port, USB 65, 7, 9, 25
Power steering 15
Pre-heater, Diesel 18
Pressures, tyres 183, 191, 195, 217
Pre-tensioning seat belts 105
Priming the fuel system 187
Profiles 16, 31
Programmable cruise control 139
Protecting children 106, 109-113
Puncture 189, 191

R

Radio 4-5, 6-7, 9, 23, 25
Radio, digital (Digital Audio Broadcasting - DAB) 6, 8, 24
Range, AdBlue 31-32
RDS 7, 23-24
Rear screen, demisting 79
Recharging the battery 205
Recirculation, air 75-77
Reduction of electrical load 177
Regeneration of the particle filter 182
Reinitialisation of the under-inflation detection system 168
Reinitialising the remote control 45-46
Reminder, key in ignition 119
Reminder, lighting on 86
Remote control 37-39, 42, 44, 47-48, 120
Removing a wheel 193-195
Removing the mat 64-65
Replacing bulbs 195-197
Replacing fuses 201-203
Replacing the air filter 181
Replacing the oil filter 182
Replacing the passenger compartment filter 181
Reservoir, screenwash 180-181
Resetting the service indicator 28
Resetting the trip recorder 29
Reversing camera 163
Reversing lamps 199
Roof bars 177
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 187

S

Safety, children 106, 109-113
Saturation of the particle filter (Diesel) 182
Screen, instrument panel 29
Screen menu map 12
Screen, multifunction (with audio system) 4
Screenwash, front 92
Screenwash, rear 92
SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) 183
Seat belts 15, 103-105, 111
Seat, bench front, 2-seat 61, 63, 104
Seat, rear bench 63
Seats, front 59-63
Seats, front bench 61-63
Seats, heated 61
Seats, Multiflex ~ Extenso Cab 70
Seats, rear 58, 61, 63-64
Serial number, vehicle 217
Service indicator 28
Servicing 28
Settings, equipment 29
Settings, system 29, 16, 32
Sidelamps 85, 87, 198
Side parking sensors 161
Side repeater 197
Sliding side door, electric 42, 50-51
Snow chains 167, 173
Snow chains, link 173
Socket, 12 V accessory 64-65
Socket, 220 V 66
Socket, auxiliary 8, 9, 25
Socket, Jack 8, 25
Speed limiter 136-139, 149-150
Speed limit recognition 133, 135, 139, 141
Stability control (ESC) 25, 97-98, 100-102
Starting a Diesel engine 170
Starting the engine 116
Starting the vehicle 16, 20, 24-25, 115, 118, 120, 126-129
Starting using another battery 204
Station, radio 4, 6-7, 23-24
Stay, bonnet 178
Steering mounted controls, audio 2-3, 3, 3
Steering wheel, adjustment 57
Stopping the vehicle 16, 20, 24-25, 115, 118-120, 126-129
Stop & Start 26, 35, 78, 83, 130-132, 171, 177, 181, 203, 206
STOP (warning lamp) 17
Storage 65
Stowing rings 68
Surround Rear Vision 164
Switching off the engine 116, 119
Synchronising the remote control 45-46

T

Tables of fuses 201-203
Tank, fuel 171-172
Telephone 66-67, 10-11, 13, 13-15, 27-30
Telephone, Bluetooth with voice recognition . 14
Temperature, coolant 15, 28-30
Textured Paint 186
Three flashes (direction indicators) 86
Time (setting) 35, 17, 33
TMC (Traffic info) 15
Topping-up AdBlue® 185
Total distance recorder 29
Touch screen 1, 1
Towbar 100, 115-116, 173-174
Towed loads 210
Towing another vehicle 206-207
Towing device 174
Towing eye 206
Traction control (ASR) 20, 97-99, 101-102
Traffic information (TA) 5
Traffic information (TMC) 15
Trailer 100, 115-116, 173
Trailer stability assist (TSA) 100
Trajectory control systems 97-98
Trip computer 33-35
Trip distance recorder 29
Type of bulbs 196
Tyres 183
Tyre under-inflation detection 18, 167-168, 191

U

Under-inflation (detection) 167
Unlocking 37-41
Unlocking from the inside 48-49
Unlocking, selective 38-40
Unlocking, total 38-40
Updating the date 35, 17, 32
Updating the time 35, 17, 33
USB 7, 9, 25

V

Ventilation 75, 77, 79, 81, 83
Voice commands 5-8, 10-12

W

Warning and indicator lamps 13
Warning lamp, airbag 19
Warning lamp, braking system 14
Warning lamp, Diesel engine pre-heater 18
Warning lamp, driver's seat belt not fastened 104
Warning lamp, low fuel level 17
Warning lamp, parking brake 14
Warning lamps 13, 15
Warning lamp, seat belts 104
Warning lamp, Service 24
Warnings and indicators 14
Washer jets, heated 78-79
Weights 210
Welcome lighting 44
Wheel, spare 183, 188, 191-192, 195
Windows, rear doors 56
Windscreen, heated 78-79
Windscreen wipers 26
Wiper blades (changing) 92-93
Wiper, rear 92
Wipers 27, 91, 94
Wipers, automatic rain sensitive 26, 92, 94

Automobiles PEUGEOT declares, by application of the provisions of the European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles PEUGEOT.

Printed in the EU
Anglais
07-18



PEUGEOT



AUTOMOBILES PEUGEOT - Siège Social : 7, rue Henri Sainte-Claire Déville - 92500 RUEIL-MALMAISON
http://www.peugeot.com
Société anonyme au capital de 172.711.770 € - R.C.S.NANTERRE : 552 144 503



www.peugeot.com

ANG. 18K9P.0640